Lesson Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Discuss the goals of the course
• Describe the HR database schema that is used in the course
• Identify the available user interface environments that can be used in this course
• Reference the available appendixes, documentation, and other resources

Lesson Objectives

This lesson gives you a high-level overview of the course and its flow. You learn about the database schema and the tables that the course uses. You are also introduced to different products in the Oracle 11g grid infrastructure.
Course Objectives

After completing this course, you should be able to do the following:

- Identify the programming extensions that PL/SQL provides to SQL
- Write PL/SQL code to interface with the database
- Design PL/SQL anonymous blocks that execute efficiently
- Use PL/SQL programming constructs and conditional control statements
- Handle run-time errors
- Describe stored procedures and functions

Course Objectives

This course presents the basics of PL/SQL. You learn about PL/SQL syntax, blocks, and programming constructs and also about the advantages of integrating SQL with those constructs. You learn how to write PL/SQL program units and execute them efficiently. In addition, you learn how to use SQL Developer as a development environment for PL/SQL. You also learn how to design reusable program units such as procedures and functions.
Human Resources (HR) Schema for This Course

The Human Resources (HR) schema is part of the Oracle Sample Schemas that can be installed in an Oracle database. The practice sessions in this course use data from the HR schema.

Table Descriptions

- **REGIONS** contains rows that represent a region such as the Americas or Asia.
- **COUNTRIES** contains rows for countries, each of which is associated with a region.
- **LOCATIONS** contains the specific address of a specific office, warehouse, or production site of a company in a particular country.
- **DEPARTMENTS** shows details about the departments in which employees work. Each department may have a relationship representing the department manager in the **EMPLOYEES** table.
- **EMPLOYEES** contains details about each employee working for a department. Some employees may not be assigned to any department.
- **JOBS** contains the job types that can be held by each employee.
- **JOB_HISTORY** contains the job history of the employees. If an employee changes departments within a job or changes jobs within a department, a new row is inserted into this table with the old job information of the employee.
Course Agenda

Day 1:
1. Introduction
   1. Introduction to PL/SQL
   2. Declaring PL/SQL Variables
   3. Writing Executable Statements
   4. Interacting with Oracle Database Server: SQL Statements in PL/SQL Programs
   5. Writing Control Structures

Day 2:
6. Working with Composite Data Types
7. Using Explicit Cursors
8. Handling Exceptions
9. Introducing Stored Procedures and Functions
Class Account Information

- A cloned HR account ID is set up for you.
- Your account ID is ora41.
- The password matches your account ID.
- Each machine has its own complete environment, and is assigned the same account.
- The instructor has a separate ID.
Appendixes Used in This Course

- Appendix A: Practices and Solutions
- Appendix B: Table Descriptions and Data
- Appendix C: Using SQL Developer
- Appendix D: Using SQL*Plus
- Appendix E: Using JDeveloper
- Appendix F: REF Cursors
- Appendix AP: Additional Practices and Solutions
PL/SQL Development Environments

This course setup provides the following tools for developing PL/SQL code:

- Oracle SQL Developer (used in this course)
- Oracle SQL*Plus
- Oracle JDeveloper IDE

PL/SQL Development Environments

Oracle provides several tools that can be used to write PL/SQL code. Some of the development tools that are available for use in this course:

- **Oracle SQL Developer**: A graphical tool
- **Oracle SQL*Plus**: A window or command-line application
- **Oracle JDeveloper**: A window-based integrated development environment (IDE)

**Note**: The code and screen examples presented in the course notes were generated from output in the SQL Developer environment.
What Is Oracle SQL Developer?

- Oracle SQL Developer is a free graphical tool that enhances productivity and simplifies database development tasks.
- You can connect to any target Oracle database schema using standard Oracle database authentication.
- You will use SQL Developer in this course.
- Appendix C contains details on using SQL Developer.

Oracle SQL Developer is a free graphical tool designed to improve your productivity and simplify the development of everyday database tasks. With just a few clicks, you can easily create and maintain stored procedures, test SQL statements, and view optimizer plans.

SQL Developer, the visual tool for database development, simplifies the following tasks:
- Browsing and managing database objects
- Executing SQL statements and scripts
- Editing and debugging PL/SQL statements
- Creating reports

You can connect to any target Oracle database schema by using standard Oracle database authentication. When you are connected, you can perform operations on objects in the database.

Appendix C

Appendix C of this course provides an introduction on using the SQL Developer interface. Refer to the appendix for information about creating a database connection, interacting with data using SQL and PL/SQL, and more.
Coding PL/SQL in SQL*Plus

Oracle SQL*Plus is a command-line interface that enables you to submit SQL statements and PL/SQL blocks for execution and receive the results in an application or a command window.

SQL*Plus is:
- Shipped with the database
- Installed on a client and on the database server system
- Accessed using an icon or the command line

When you code PL/SQL subprograms using SQL*Plus, remember the following:
- You create subprograms by using the CREATE SQL statement.
- You execute subprograms by using either an anonymous PL/SQL block or the EXECUTE command.
- If you use the DBMS_OUTPUT package procedures to print text to the screen, you must first execute the SET SERVEROUTPUT ON command in your session.

Note
- To launch SQL*Plus in Linux environment, open a Terminal window and enter the command: sqlplus.
- For more information about using SQL*Plus, see Appendix D.
Coding PL/SQL in Oracle JDeveloper

Oracle JDeveloper allows developers to create, edit, test, and debug PL/SQL code by using a sophisticated GUI. Oracle JDeveloper is a part of Oracle Developer Suite and is also available as a separate product.

When you code PL/SQL in JDeveloper, consider the following:
- You first create a database connection to enable JDeveloper to access a database schema owner for the subprograms.
- You can then use the JDeveloper context menus on the Database connection to create a new subprogram construct using the built-in JDeveloper Code Editor.
- You invoke a subprogram by using a Run command on the context menu for the named subprogram. The output appears in the JDeveloper Log Message window, as shown in the lower portion of the screenshot.

Note
- JDeveloper provides color-coding syntax in the JDeveloper Code Editor and is sensitive to PL/SQL language constructs and statements.
- For more information about using JDeveloper, see Appendix E.
Oracle 11g SQL and PL/SQL Documentation

- Oracle Database New Features Guide 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer’s Guide 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database Reference 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database Concepts 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference 11g Release 2 (11.2)
- Oracle Database SQL Developer User’s Guide Release 1.5
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned how to:

• Discuss the goals of the course
• Describe the HR database schema that is used in the course
• Identify the available user interface environments that can be used in this course
• Reference the available appendixes, documentation, and other resources
Practice I Overview: Getting Started

This practice covers the following topics:

- Starting SQL Developer
- Creating a new database connection
- Browsing the HR schema tables
- Setting a SQL Developer preference

Practice I: Overview

In this practice, you use SQL Developer to execute SQL statements to examine data in the HR schema. You also create a simple anonymous block.

Note: All written practices use SQL Developer as the development environment. Although it is recommended that you use SQL Developer, you can also use the SQL*Plus or JDeveloper environments that are available in this course.
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Explain the need for PL/SQL
• Explain the benefits of PL/SQL
• Identify the different types of PL/SQL blocks
• Output messages in PL/SQL

Objectives

This lesson introduces PL/SQL and the PL/SQL programming constructs. You also learn about the benefits of PL/SQL.
Agenda

• Understanding the benefits and structure of PL/SQL
• Examining PL/SQL blocks
• Generating output messages in PL/SQL
About PL/SQL

PL/SQL:
• Stands for “Procedural Language extension to SQL”
• Is Oracle Corporation’s standard data access language for relational databases
• Seamlessly integrates procedural constructs with SQL

Structured Query Language (SQL) is the primary language used to access and modify data in relational databases. There are only a few SQL commands, so you can easily learn and use them. Consider an example:

```
SELECT first_name, department_id, salary FROM employees;
```

The preceding SQL statement is simple and straightforward. However, if you want to alter any data that is retrieved in a conditional manner, you soon encounter the limitations of SQL. Consider a slightly modified problem statement: For every employee retrieved, check the department ID and salary. Depending on the department’s performance and also the employee’s salary, you may want to provide varying bonuses to the employees.

Looking at the problem, you know that you have to execute the preceding SQL statement, collect the data, and apply logic to the data.

• One solution is to write a SQL statement for each department to give bonuses to the employees in that department. Remember that you also have to check the salary component before deciding the bonus amount. This makes it a little complicated.
• A more effective solution might include conditional statements. PL/SQL is designed to meet such requirements. It provides a programming extension to the already-existing SQL.
About PL/SQL

PL/SQL:
• Provides a block structure for executable units of code. Maintenance of code is made easier with such a well-defined structure.
• Provides procedural constructs such as:
  – Variables, constants, and data types
  – Control structures such as conditional statements and loops
  – Reusable program units that are written once and executed many times

About PL/SQL (continued)

PL/SQL defines a block structure for writing code. Maintaining and debugging code is made easier with such a structure because you can easily understand the flow and execution of the program unit.

PL/SQL offers modern software engineering features such as data encapsulation, exception handling, information hiding, and object orientation. It brings state-of-the-art programming to the Oracle Server and toolset. PL/SQL provides all the procedural constructs that are available in any third-generation language (3GL).
PL/SQL Run-Time Architecture

The diagram in the slide shows a PL/SQL block being executed by the PL/SQL engine. The PL/SQL engine resides in:

- The Oracle database for executing stored subprograms
- The Oracle Forms client when you run client/server applications, or in the Oracle Application Server when you use Oracle Forms Services to run Forms on the Web

Irrespective of the PL/SQL run-time environment, the basic architecture remains the same. Therefore, all PL/SQL statements are processed in the Procedural Statement Executor, and all SQL statements must be sent to the SQL Statement Executor for processing by the Oracle Server processes. The SQL environment may also invoke the PL/SQL environment. For example, the PL/SQL environment is invoked when a PL/SQL function is used in a `SELECT` statement.

The PL/SQL engine is a virtual machine that resides in memory and processes the PL/SQL m-code instructions. When the PL/SQL engine encounters a SQL statement, a context switch is made to pass the SQL statement to the Oracle Server processes. The PL/SQL engine waits for the SQL statement to complete and for the results to be returned before it continues to process subsequent statements in the PL/SQL block. The Oracle Forms PL/SQL engine runs in the client for the client/server implementation, and in the application server for the Forms Services implementation. In either case, SQL statements are typically sent over a network to an Oracle Server for processing.
Benefits of PL/SQL

- Integration of procedural constructs with SQL
- Improved performance

**Integration of procedural constructs with SQL:** The most important advantage of PL/SQL is the integration of procedural constructs with SQL. SQL is a nonprocedural language. When you issue a SQL command, your command tells the database server *what* to do. However, you cannot specify *how* to do it. PL/SQL integrates control statements and conditional statements with SQL, giving you better control of your SQL statements and their execution. Earlier in this lesson, you saw an example of the need for such integration.

**Improved performance:** Without PL/SQL, you would not be able to logically combine SQL statements as one unit. If you have designed an application that contains forms, you may have many different forms with fields in each form. When a form submits data, you may have to execute a number of SQL statements. SQL statements are sent to the database one at a time. This results in many network trips and one call to the database for each SQL statement, thereby increasing network traffic and reducing performance (especially in a client/server model). With PL/SQL, you can combine all these SQL statements into a single program unit. The application can send the entire block to the database instead of sending the SQL statements one at a time. This significantly reduces the number of database calls. As the slide illustrates, if the application is SQL intensive, you can use PL/SQL blocks to group SQL statements before sending them to the Oracle database server for execution.
Benefits of PL/SQL

- Modularized program development
- Integration with Oracle tools
- Portability
- Exception handling

Benefits of PL/SQL (continued)

**Modularized program development:** The basic unit in all PL/SQL programs is the block. Blocks can be in a sequence or they can be nested in other blocks. Modularized program development has the following advantages:

- You can group logically related statements within blocks.
- You can nest blocks inside larger blocks to build powerful programs.
- You can break your application into smaller modules. If you are designing a complex application, PL/SQL allows you to break down the application into smaller, manageable, and logically related modules.
- You can easily maintain and debug code.

In PL/SQL, modularization is implemented using procedures, functions, and packages, which are discussed in the lesson titled “Introducing Stored Procedures and Functions.”

**Integration with tools:** The PL/SQL engine is integrated in Oracle tools such as Oracle Forms and Oracle Reports. When you use these tools, the locally available PL/SQL engine processes the procedural statements; only the SQL statements are passed to the database.
Benefits of PL/SQL (continued)

**Portability:** PL/SQL programs can run anywhere an Oracle Server runs, irrespective of the operating system and platform. You do not need to customize them to each new environment. You can write portable program packages and create libraries that can be reused in different environments.

**Exception handling:** PL/SQL enables you to handle exceptions efficiently. You can define separate blocks for dealing with exceptions. You learn more about exception handling in the lesson titled “Handling Exceptions.”

PL/SQL shares the same data type system as SQL (with some extensions) and uses the same expression syntax.
PL/SQL Block Structure

- **DECLARE (optional)**
  - Variables, cursors, user-defined exceptions
- **BEGIN (mandatory)**
  - SQL statements
  - PL/SQL statements
- **EXCEPTION (optional)**
  - Actions to perform when exceptions occur
- **END; (mandatory)**

PL/SQL Block Structure

The slide shows a basic PL/SQL block. A PL/SQL block consists of four sections:

- **Declarative (optional)**: The declarative section begins with the keyword `DECLARE` and ends when the executable section starts.
- **Begin (required)**: The executable section begins with the keyword `BEGIN`. This section needs to have at least one statement. However, the executable section of a PL/SQL block can include any number of PL/SQL blocks.
- **Exception handling (optional)**: The exception section is nested within the executable section. This section begins with the keyword `EXCEPTION`.
- **End (required)**: All PL/SQL blocks must conclude with an `END` statement. Observe that `END` is terminated with a semicolon.
**PL/SQL Block Structure (continued)**

In a PL/SQL block, the keywords DECLARE, BEGIN, and EXCEPTION are not terminated by a semicolon. However, the keyword END, all SQL statements, and PL/SQL statements must be terminated with a semicolon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Inclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declarative (DECLARE)</td>
<td>Contains declarations of all variables, constants, cursors, and user-defined exceptions that are referenced in the executable and exception sections</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executable (BEGIN ... END)</td>
<td>Contains SQL statements to retrieve data from the database; contains PL/SQL statements to manipulate data in the block</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception (EXCEPTION)</td>
<td>Specifies the actions to perform when errors and abnormal conditions arise in the executable section</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Agenda

- Understanding the benefits and structure of PL/SQL
- Examining PL/SQL blocks
- Generating output messages in PL/SQL
Block Types

A PL/SQL program comprises one or more blocks. These blocks can be entirely separate or nested within another block.

There are three types of blocks that make up a PL/SQL program:

- Procedures
- Functions
- Anonymous blocks

**Procedures:** Procedures are named objects that contain SQL and/or PL/SQL statements.

**Functions:** Functions are named objects that contain SQL and/or PL/SQL statements. Unlike a procedure, a function returns a value of a specified data type.

**Anonymous blocks**

Anonymous blocks are unnamed blocks. They are declared inline at the point in an application where they are to be executed and are compiled each time the application is executed. These blocks are not stored in the database. They are passed to the PL/SQL engine for execution at run time. Triggers in Oracle Developer components consist of such blocks.

If you want to execute the same block again, you have to rewrite the block. You cannot invoke or call the block that you wrote earlier because blocks are anonymous and do not exist after they are executed.
Block Types (continued)

Subprograms

Subprograms are complementary to anonymous blocks. They are named PL/SQL blocks that are stored in the database. Because they are named and stored, you can invoke them whenever you want (depending on your application). You can declare them either as procedures or as functions. You typically use a procedure to perform an action and a function to compute and return a value.

Subprograms can be stored at the server or application level. Using Oracle Developer components (Forms, Reports), you can declare procedures and functions as part of the application (a form or report) and call them from other procedures, functions, and triggers within the same application, whenever necessary.
### Program Constructs

The following table outlines a variety of PL/SQL program constructs that use the basic PL/SQL block. The program constructs are available based on the environment in which they are executed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program Construct</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous blocks</td>
<td>Unnamed PL/SQL blocks that are embedded within an application or are issued interactively</td>
<td>All PL/SQL environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application procedures or functions</td>
<td>Named PL/SQL blocks that are stored in an Oracle Forms Developer application or a shared library; can accept parameters and can be invoked repeatedly by name</td>
<td>Oracle Developer tools components (for example, Oracle Forms Developer, Oracle Reports)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stored procedures or functions</td>
<td>Named PL/SQL blocks that are stored in the Oracle server; can accept parameters and can be invoked repeatedly by name</td>
<td>Oracle server or Oracle Developer tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packages (application or stored)</td>
<td>Named PL/SQL modules that group related procedures, functions, and identifiers</td>
<td>Oracle server and Oracle Developer tools components (for example, Oracle Forms Developer)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Program Constructs (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program Construct</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Database triggers</td>
<td>PL/SQL blocks that are associated with a database table and are fired automatically when triggered by various events</td>
<td>Oracle server or any Oracle tool that issues the DML</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examining an Anonymous Block

To create an anonymous block by using SQL Developer, enter the block in the workspace (as shown in the slide).

**Example**

The example block has the declarative section and the executable section. You need not pay attention to the syntax of statements in the block; you learn the syntax later in the course.

The anonymous block gets the `first_name` of the employee whose `employee_id` is 100, and stores it in a variable called `v_fname`. 
Executing an Anonymous Block

Click the Run Script button to execute the anonymous block:

```
DECLARE
    v_frame VARCHAR2(20);
BEGIN
    SELECT first_name INTO v_frame FROM employees
    WHERE employee_id=100;
END;
/
```

Note: The message “anonymous block completed” is displayed in the Script Output window after the block is executed.
Agenda

- Understanding the benefits and structure of PL/SQL
- Examining PL/SQL blocks
- Generating output messages in PL/SQL
Enabling Output of a PL/SQL Block

1. To enable output in SQL Developer, execute the following command before running the PL/SQL block:

   ```sql
   SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
   ```

2. Use a predefined Oracle package and its procedure in the anonymous block:
   ```sql
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The First Name of the Employee is ' || v_fname);
   ```

Enabling Output of a PL/SQL Block

In the example shown in the previous slide, a value is stored in the v_fname variable. However, the value has not been printed.

PL/SQL does not have built-in input or output functionality. Therefore, you need to use predefined Oracle packages for input and output. To generate output, you must perform the following:

1. Execute the following command:
   ```sql
   SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
   ```

   **Note:** To enable output in SQL*Plus, you must explicitly issue the `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` command.

2. In the PL/SQL block, use the `PUT_LINE` procedure of the `DBMS_OUTPUT` package to display the output. Pass the value that has to be printed as an argument to this procedure (as shown in the slide). The procedure then outputs the argument.
Viewing the Output of a PL/SQL Block

Press F5 (or click the Run Script icon) to view the output for the PL/SQL block. This action:

1. Executes the SET SERVEROUTPUT ON command
2. Runs the anonymous PL/SQL block

The output appears on the Script Output tab.
A PL/SQL block *must* consist of the following three sections:

1. **A Declarative section**, which begins with the keyword `DECLARE` and ends when the executable section starts.
2. **An Executable section**, which begins with the keyword `BEGIN` and ends with `END`.
3. **An Exception handling section**, which begins with the keyword `EXCEPTION` and is nested within the executable section.

1. True
2. False

**Answer:** 2

A PL/SQL block consists of three sections:

- **Declarative (optional):** The optional declarative section begins with the keyword `DECLARE` and ends when the executable section starts.
- **Executable (required):** The required executable section begins with the keyword `BEGIN` and ends with `END`. This section essentially needs to have at least one statement. Observe that `END` is terminated with a semicolon. The executable section of a PL/SQL block can, in turn, include any number of PL/SQL blocks.
- **Exception handling (optional):** The optional exception section is nested within the executable section. This section begins with the keyword `EXCEPTION`. 
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned how to:

• Integrate SQL statements with PL/SQL program constructs
• Describe the benefits of PL/SQL
• Differentiate between PL/SQL block types
• Output messages in PL/SQL

PL/SQL is a language that has programming features that serve as extensions to SQL. SQL, which is a nonprocedural language, is made procedural with PL/SQL programming constructs. PL/SQL applications can run on any platform or operating system on which an Oracle Server runs. In this lesson, you learned how to build basic PL/SQL blocks.
Practice 1: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:
- Identifying the PL/SQL blocks that execute successfully
- Creating and executing a simple PL/SQL block

Practice 1: Overview
This practice reinforces the basics of PL/SQL covered in this lesson.
- Exercise 1 is a paper-based exercise in which you identify PL/SQL blocks that execute successfully.
- Exercise 2 involves creating and executing a simple PL/SQL block.
Declaring PL/SQL Variables
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Recognize valid and invalid identifiers
- List the uses of variables
- Declare and initialize variables
- List and describe various data types
- Identify the benefits of using the `%TYPE` attribute
- Declare, use, and print bind variables

Objectives

You have already learned about basic PL/SQL blocks and their sections. In this lesson, you learn about valid and invalid identifiers. You learn how to declare and initialize variables in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block. The lesson describes the various data types. You also learn about the `%TYPE` attribute and its benefits.
Agenda

- Introducing variables
- Examining variable data types and the %TYPE attribute
- Examining bind variables
Use of Variables

Variables can be used for:
- Temporary storage of data
- Manipulation of stored values
- Reusability

Use of Variables

With PL/SQL, you can declare variables, and then use them in SQL and procedural statements. Variables are mainly used for storage of data and manipulation of stored values. Consider the PL/SQL statement in the slide. The statement retrieves first_name and department_id from the table. If you have to manipulate first_name or department_id, you have to store the retrieved value. Variables are used to temporarily store the value. You can use the value stored in these variables for processing and manipulating data. Variables can store any PL/SQL object such as variables, types, cursors, and subprograms.

Reusability is another advantage of declaring variables. After the variables are declared, you can use them repeatedly in an application by referring to them multiple times in various statements.
Requirements for Variable Names

A variable name:
- Must start with a letter
- Can include letters or numbers
- Can include special characters (such as $, _, and #)
- Must contain no more than 30 characters
- Must not include reserved words

The rules for naming a variable are listed in the slide.
Handling Variables in PL/SQL

Variables are:

- Declared and (optionally) initialized in the declarative section
- Used and assigned new values in the executable section
- Passed as parameters to PL/SQL subprograms
- Used to hold the output of a PL/SQL subprogram

Handling Variables in PL/SQL

You can use variables in the following ways:

- **Declare and initialize them in the declaration section:** You can declare variables in the declarative part of any PL/SQL block, subprogram, or package. Declarations allocate storage space for a value, specify its data type, and name the storage location so that you can reference it. Declarations can also assign an initial value and impose the NOT NULL constraint on the variable. Forward references are not allowed. You must declare a variable before referencing it in other statements, including other declarative statements.

- **Use them and assign new values to them in the executable section:** In the executable section, the existing value of the variable can be replaced with a new value.

- **Pass them as parameters to PL/SQL subprograms:** Subprograms can take parameters. You can pass variables as parameters to subprograms.

- **Use them to hold the output of a PL/SQL subprogram:** Variables can be used to hold the value that is returned by a function.
Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables

Syntax:

```
identifier [CONSTANT] datatype [NOT NULL]
[ := | DEFAULT expr];
```

Examples:

```
DECLARE
  v_hiredate DATE;
  v_deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL := 10;
  v_location VARCHAR2(13) := 'Atlanta';
  c_comm CONSTANT NUMBER := 1400;
```

Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables

You must declare all PL/SQL identifiers in the declaration section before referencing them in the PL/SQL block. You have the option of assigning an initial value to a variable (as shown in the slide). You do not need to assign a value to a variable in order to declare it. If you refer to other variables in a declaration, be sure that they are already declared separately in a previous statement.

In the syntax:

- `identifier` is the name of the variable
- `CONSTANT` constrains the variable so that its value cannot change (Constants must be initialized.)
- `data type` is a scalar, composite, reference, or LOB data type (This course covers only scalar, composite, and LOB data types.)
- `NOT NULL` constrains the variable so that it contains a value (NOT NULL variables must be initialized.)
- `expr` is any PL/SQL expression that can be a literal expression, another variable, or an expression involving operators and functions

Note: In addition to variables, you can also declare cursors and exceptions in the declarative section. You learn about declaring cursors in the lesson titled “Using Explicit Cursors” and about exceptions in the lesson titled “Handling Exceptions.”
Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables

1. In the first block, the `v_myName` variable is declared but not initialized. A value `John` is assigned to the variable in the executable section.
   - String literals must be enclosed in single quotation marks. If your string has a quotation mark as in "Today's Date," the string would be 'Today' 's Date'.
   - The assignment operator is: `:=`.
   - The `PUT_LINE` procedure is invoked by passing the `v_myName` variable. The value of the variable is concatenated with the string 'My name is:'.
   - Output of this anonymous block is:

2. In the second block, the `v_myName` variable is declared and initialized in the declarative section. `v_myName` holds the value `John` after initialization. This value is manipulated in the executable section of the block. The output of this anonymous block is:
Delimiters in String Literals

If your string contains an apostrophe (identical to a single quotation mark), you must double the quotation mark, as in the following example:

```plsql
DECLARE
    v_event VARCHAR2(15);
BEGIN
    v_event  := q'!Father's day!';
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('3rd Sunday in June is :
        '|| v_event);
    v_event  := q' [Mother's day]';
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('2nd Sunday in May is :
        '|| v_event);
END;
/
```

The first quotation mark acts as the escape character. This makes your string complicated, especially if you have SQL statements as strings. You can specify any character that is not present in the string as a delimiter. The slide shows how to use the `q'` notation to specify the delimiter. The example uses `!` and `[` as delimiters. Consider the following example:

```plsql
DECLARE
    v_event VARCHAR2(15):='Father''s day';
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('3rd Sunday in June is : Father''s day');
END;
/
```

You can compare this with the first example on this page. You start the string with `q'` if you want to use a delimiter. The character following the notation is the delimiter used. Enter your string after specifying the delimiter, close the delimiter, and close the notation with a single quotation mark. The following example shows how to use `[` as a delimiter:

```plsql
DECLARE
    v_event VARCHAR2(15):= q'[Mother's day]';
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('2nd Sunday in May is : Mother's day');
END;
/
```
Agenda

- Introducing variables
- Examining variable data types and the %TYPE attribute
- Examining bind variables
Types of Variables

- PL/SQL variables:
  - Scalar
  - Reference
  - Large object (LOB)
  - Composite
- Non-PL/SQL variables: Bind variables

Types of Variables

Every PL/SQL variable has a data type, which specifies a storage format, constraints, and a valid range of values. PL/SQL supports several data type categories, including scalar, reference, large object (LOB), and composite.

- **Scalar data types**: Scalar data types hold a single value. The value depends on the data type of the variable. For example, the `v_myName` variable in the example in the section “Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables” (in this lesson) is of type VARCHAR2. Therefore, `v_myName` can hold a string value. PL/SQL also supports Boolean variables.

- **Reference data types**: Reference data types hold values, called *pointers*, which point to a storage location.

- **LOB data types**: LOB data types hold values, called *locators*, which specify the location of large objects (such as graphic images) that are stored outside the table.

- **Composite data types**: Composite data types are available by using PL/SQL *collection and record variables*. PL/SQL collections and records contain internal elements that you can treat as individual variables.

Non-PL/SQL variables include host language variables declared in precompiler programs, screen fields in Forms applications, and host variables. You learn about host variables later in this lesson.

For more information about LOBs, see the *PL/SQL User’s Guide and Reference.*
Types of Variables

The slide illustrates the following data types:

- **TRUE** represents a Boolean value.
- **15-JAN-09** represents a DATE.
- The image represents a BLOB.
- The text in the callout can represent a VARCHAR2 data type or a CLOB.
- **256120.08** represents a NUMBER data type with precision and scale.
- The film reel represents a BFILE.
- The city name *Atlanta* represents a VARCHAR2 data type.
Guidelines for Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables

- Follow consistent naming conventions.
- Use meaningful identifiers for variables.
- Initialize variables that are designated as NOT NULL and CONSTANT.
- Initialize variables with the assignment operator (:=) or the DEFAULT keyword:

```plsql
v_myName VARCHAR2(20) := 'John';

v_myName VARCHAR2(20) DEFAULT 'John';
```

- Declare one identifier per line for better readability and code maintenance.

Guidelines for Declaring and Initializing PL/SQL Variables

Here are some guidelines to follow when you declare PL/SQL variables.
- Follow consistent naming conventions—for example, you might use name to represent a variable and c_name to represent a constant. Similarly, to name a variable, you can use v_fname. The key is to apply your naming convention consistently for easier identification.
- Use meaningful and appropriate identifiers for variables. For example, consider using salary and sal_with_commission instead of salary1 and salary2.
- If you use the NOT NULL constraint, you must assign a value when you declare the variable.
- In constant declarations, the CONSTANT keyword must precede the type specifier. The following declaration names a constant of NUMBER type and assigns the value of 50,000 to the constant. A constant must be initialized in its declaration; otherwise, you get a compilation error. After initializing a constant, you cannot change its value.

```plsql
sal CONSTANT NUMBER := 50000.00;
```
Guidelines for Declaring PL/SQL Variables

• Avoid using column names as identifiers.

```
DECLARE
  employee_id NUMBER(6);
BEGIN
  SELECT employee_id
  INTO employee_id
  FROM employees
  WHERE last_name = 'Kochhar';
END;
/
```

• Use the NOT NULL constraint when the variable must hold a value.

```
DECLARE
  employee_id NUMBER(6);
BEGIN
  SELECT employee_id
  INTO employee_id
  FROM employees
  WHERE last_name = 'Kochhar';
END;
/
```

Guidelines forDeclaring PL/SQL Variables

• Initialize the variable to an expression with the assignment operator (:=) or with the DEFAULT reserved word. If you do not assign an initial value, the new variable contains NULL by default until you assign a value. To assign or reassign a value to a variable, you write a PL/SQL assignment statement. However, it is good programming practice to initialize all variables.

• Two objects can have the same name only if they are defined in different blocks. Where they coexist, you can qualify them with labels and use them.

• Avoid using column names as identifiers. If PL/SQL variables occur in SQL statements and have the same name as a column, the Oracle Server assumes that it is the column that is being referenced. Although the code example in the slide works, code that is written using the same name for a database table and a variable is not easy to read or maintain.

• Impose the NOT NULL constraint when the variable must contain a value. You cannot assign nulls to a variable that is defined as NOT NULL. The NOT NULL constraint must be followed by an initialization clause.

```
pincode VARCHAR2(15) NOT NULL := 'Oxford';
```
## Naming Conventions of PL/SQL Structures Used in This Course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PL/SQL Structure</th>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>v_variable_name</td>
<td>v_rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>c_constant_name</td>
<td>c_rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subprogram parameter</td>
<td>p_parameter_name</td>
<td>p_id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bind (host) variable</td>
<td>b_bind_name</td>
<td>b_salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cursor</td>
<td>cur_cursor_name</td>
<td>cur_emp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record</td>
<td>rec_record_name</td>
<td>rec_emp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>type_name_type</td>
<td>ename_table_type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception</td>
<td>e_exception_name</td>
<td>e_products_invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File handle</td>
<td>f_file_handle_name</td>
<td>f_file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Naming Conventions of PL/SQL Structures Used in This Course

The table in the slide displays some examples of the naming conventions for PL/SQL structures that are used in this course.
Scalar Data Types

- Hold a single value
- Have no internal components

Scalar Data Types

PL/SQL provides a variety of predefined data types. For instance, you can choose from integer, floating point, character, Boolean, date, collection, and LOB types. This lesson covers the basic types that are used frequently in PL/SQL programs.

A scalar data type holds a single value and has no internal components. Scalar data types can be classified into four categories: number, character, date, and Boolean. Character and number data types have subtypes that associate a base type to a constraint. For example, INTEGER and POSITIVE are subtypes of the NUMBER base type.

For more information about scalar data types (as well as a complete list), see the PL/SQL User’s Guide and Reference.
Base Scalar Data Types

- CHAR [maximum_length]
- VARCHAR2 (maximum_length)
- NUMBER [(precision, scale)]
- BINARY_INTEGER
- PLS_INTEGER
- BOOLEAN
- BINARY_FLOAT
- BINARY_DOUBLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAR [maximum_length]</td>
<td>Base type for fixed-length character data up to 32,767 bytes. If you do not specify a maximum length, the default length is set to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARCHAR2 (maximum_length)</td>
<td>Base type for variable-length character data up to 32,767 bytes. There is no default size for VARCHAR2 variables and constants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMBER [(precision, scale)]</td>
<td>Number having precision p and scale s. The precision p can range from 1 through 38. The scale s can range from –84 through 127.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINARY_INTEGER</td>
<td>Base type for integers between –2,147,483,647 and 2,147,483,647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLS_INTEGER</td>
<td>Base type for signed integers between –2,147,483,647 and 2,147,483,647. PLS_INTEGER values require less storage and are faster than NUMBER values. In Oracle Database 11g, the PLS_INTEGER and BINARY_INTEGER data types are identical. The arithmetic operations on PLS_INTEGER and BINARY_INTEGER values are faster than on NUMBER values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Base type that stores one of the three possible values used for logical calculations: TRUE, FALSE, and NULL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINARY_FLOAT</td>
<td>Represents floating-point number in IEEE 754 format. It requires 5 bytes to store the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINARY_DOUBLE</td>
<td>Represents floating-point number in IEEE 754 format. It requires 9 bytes to store the value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Base Scalar Data Types

- **DATE**
- **TIMESTAMP**
- **TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE**
- **TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE**
- **INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH**
- **INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND**

### Base Scalar Data Types (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DATE</strong></td>
<td>Base type for dates and times. DATE values include the time of day in seconds since midnight. The range for dates is between 4712 B.C. and A.D. 9999.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TIMESTAMP</strong></td>
<td>The TIMESTAMP data type, which extends the DATE data type, stores the year, month, day, hour, minute, second, and fraction of second. The syntax is TIMESTAMP[(precision)], where the optional parameter precision specifies the number of digits in the fractional part of the seconds field. To specify the precision, you must use an integer in the range 0–9. The default is 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE</strong></td>
<td>The TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE data type, which extends the TIMESTAMP data type, includes a time-zone displacement. The time-zone displacement is the difference (in hours and minutes) between local time and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time. The syntax is TIMESTAMP[(precision)] WITH TIME ZONE, where the optional parameter precision specifies the number of digits in the fractional part of the seconds field. To specify the precision, you must use an integer in the range 0–9. The default is 6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Base Scalar Data Types (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE</td>
<td>The TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE data type, which extends the TIMESTAMP data type, includes a time-zone displacement. The time-zone displacement is the difference (in hours and minutes) between local time and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time. The syntax is <code>TIMESTAMP[(precision)] WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE</code>, where the optional parameter <code>precision</code> specifies the number of digits in the fractional part of the seconds field. You cannot use a symbolic constant or variable to specify the precision; you must use an integer literal in the range 0–9. The default is 6. This data type differs from TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE in that when you insert a value into a database column, the value is normalized to the database time zone, and the time-zone displacement is not stored in the column. When you retrieve the value, the Oracle server returns the value in your local session time zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH</td>
<td>You use the INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH data type to store and manipulate intervals of years and months. The syntax is <code>INTERVAL YEAR[(precision)] TO MONTH</code>, where <code>precision</code> specifies the number of digits in the years field. You cannot use a symbolic constant or variable to specify the precision; you must use an integer literal in the range 0–4. The default is 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND</td>
<td>You use the INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND data type to store and manipulate intervals of days, hours, minutes, and seconds. The syntax is <code>INTERVAL DAY[(precision1)] TO SECOND[(precision2)]</code>, where <code>precision1</code> and <code>precision2</code> specify the number of digits in the days field and seconds field, respectively. In both cases, you cannot use a symbolic constant or variable to specify the precision; you must use an integer literal in the range 0–9. The defaults are 2 and 6, respectively.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Declaring Scalar Variables

Examples:

```sql
DECLARE
  v_emp_job    VARCHAR2(9);
  v_count_loop BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
  v_dept_total_sal NUMBER(9,2) := 0;
  v_orderdate   DATE := SYSDATE + 7;
  c_tax_rate   CONSTANT NUMBER(3,2) := 8.25;
  v_valid      BOOLEAN NOT NULL := TRUE;
...```

Declaring Scalar Variables

The examples of variable declaration shown in the slide are defined as follows:

- **v_emp_job**: Variable to store an employee job title
- **v_count_loop**: Variable to count the iterations of a loop; initialized to 0
- **v_dept_total_sal**: Variable to accumulate the total salary for a department; initialized to 0
- **v_orderdate**: Variable to store the ship date of an order; initialized to one week from today
- **c_tax_rate**: Constant variable for the tax rate (which never changes throughout the PL/SQL block); set to 8.25
- **v_valid**: Flag to indicate whether a piece of data is valid or invalid; initialized to TRUE
%TYPE Attribute

- Is used to declare a variable according to:
  - A database column definition
  - Another declared variable
- Is prefixed with:
  - The database table and column name
  - The name of the declared variable

PL/SQL variables are usually declared to hold and manipulate data stored in a database. When you declare PL/SQL variables to hold column values, you must ensure that the variable is of the correct data type and precision. If it is not, a PL/SQL error occurs during execution. If you have to design large subprograms, this can be time consuming and error prone.

Rather than hard-coding the data type and precision of a variable, you can use the %TYPE attribute to declare a variable according to another previously declared variable or database column. The %TYPE attribute is most often used when the value stored in the variable is derived from a table in the database. When you use the %TYPE attribute to declare a variable, you should prefix it with the database table and column name. If you refer to a previously declared variable, prefix the variable name of the previously declared variable to the variable being declared.
%TYPE Attribute (continued)

Advantages of the %TYPE Attribute

• You can avoid errors caused by data type mismatch or wrong precision.
• You can avoid hard coding the data type of a variable.
• You need not change the variable declaration if the column definition changes. If you have already declared some variables for a particular table without using the %TYPE attribute, the PL/SQL block may throw errors if the column for which the variable is declared is altered. When you use the %TYPE attribute, PL/SQL determines the data type and size of the variable when the block is compiled. This ensures that such a variable is always compatible with the column that is used to populate it.
Declaring Variables with the %TYPE Attribute

Syntax

```plaintext
identifier table.column_name%TYPE;
```

Examples

```plaintext
... v_emp_lname employees.last_name%TYPE;
...
... v_balance NUMBER(7,2);
v_min_balance v_balance%TYPE := 1000;
...```

Declaring Variables with the %TYPE Attribute

Declare variables to store the last name of an employee. The `v_emp_lname` variable is defined to be of the same data type as the `v_last_name` column in the `employees` table. The %TYPE attribute provides the data type of a database column.

Declare variables to store the balance of a bank account, as well as the minimum balance, which is 1,000. The `v_min_balance` variable is defined to be of the same data type as the `v_balance` variable. The %TYPE attribute provides the data type of a variable.

A NOT NULL database column constraint does not apply to variables that are declared using %TYPE. Therefore, if you declare a variable using the %TYPE attribute that uses a database column defined as NOT NULL, you can assign the NULL value to the variable.
Declaring Boolean Variables

• Only the TRUE, FALSE, and NULL values can be assigned to a Boolean variable.
• Conditional expressions use the logical operators AND and OR, and the unary operator NOT to check the variable values.
• The variables always yield TRUE, FALSE, or NULL.
• Arithmetic, character, and date expressions can be used to return a Boolean value.

Declaring Boolean Variables

With PL/SQL, you can compare variables in both SQL and procedural statements. These comparisons, called Boolean expressions, consist of simple or complex expressions separated by relational operators. In a SQL statement, you can use Boolean expressions to specify the rows in a table that are affected by the statement. In a procedural statement, Boolean expressions are the basis for conditional control. NULL stands for a missing, inapplicable, or unknown value.

Examples

emp_sal1 := 50000;
emp_sal2 := 60000;

The following expression yields TRUE:

emp_sal1 < emp_sal2

Declare and initialize a Boolean variable:

DECLARE
    flag BOOLEAN := FALSE;
BEGIN
    flag := TRUE;
END;
/
**LOB Data Type Variables**

Large objects (LOBs) are meant to store a large amount of data. A database column can be of the LOB category. With the LOB category of data types (BLOB, CLOB, and so on), you can store blocks of unstructured data (such as text, graphic images, video clips, and sound wave forms) of up to 128 terabytes depending on the database block size. LOB data types allow efficient, random, piecewise access to data and can be attributes of an object type.

- The character large object (CLOB) data type is used to store large blocks of character data in the database.
- The binary large object (BLOB) data type is used to store large unstructured or structured binary objects in the database. When you insert or retrieve such data into or from the database, the database does not interpret the data. External applications that use this data must interpret the data.
- The binary file (BFILE) data type is used to store large binary files. Unlike other LOBs, BFILES are stored outside the database and not in the database. They could be operating system files. Only a pointer to the BFILE is stored in the database.
- The national language character large object (NCLOB) data type is used to store large blocks of single-byte or fixed-width multibyte NCHAR unicode data in the database.
Composite Data Types: Records and Collections

As mentioned previously, a scalar data type holds a single value and has no internal components. Composite data types—called PL/SQL Records and PL/SQL Collections—have internal components that you can treat as individual variables.

- In a PL/SQL record, the internal components can be of different data types, and are called fields. You access each field with this syntax: `record_name.field_name`. A record variable can hold a table row, or some columns from a table row. Each record field corresponds to a table column.

- In a PL/SQL collection, the internal components are always of the same data type, and are called elements. You access each element by its unique subscript. Lists and arrays are classic examples of collections. There are three types of PL/SQL collections: Associative Arrays, Nested Tables, and VARRAY types.

Note
- PL/SQL Records and Associative Arrays are covered in the lesson titled: “Working with Composite Data Types.”
- NESTED TABLE and VARRAY data types are covered in the course titled Oracle Database 11g: Advanced PL/SQL.
Agenda

• Introducing variables
• Examining variable data types and the %TYPE attribute
• Examining bind variables
Bind Variables

Bind variables are:
- Created in the environment
- Also called *host* variables
- Created with the `VARIABLE` keyword*
- Used in SQL statements and PL/SQL blocks
- Accessed even after the PL/SQL block is executed
- Referenced with a preceding colon

Values can be output using the `PRINT` command.

* Required when using SQL*Plus and SQL Developer

---

**Bind Variables**

Bind variables are variables that you create in a host environment. For this reason, they are sometimes called *host* variables.

**Uses of Bind Variables**

Bind variables are created in the environment and not in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block. Therefore, bind variables are accessible even after the block is executed. When created, bind variables can be used and manipulated by multiple subprograms. They can be used in SQL statements and PL/SQL blocks just like any other variable. These variables can be passed as runtime values into or out of PL/SQL subprograms.

**Note:** A bind variable is an environment variable, but is not a global variable.

**Creating Bind Variables**

To create a bind variable in SQL Developer, use the `VARIABLE` command. For example, you declare a variable of type `NUMBER` and `VARCHAR2` as follows:

```sql
VARIABLE return_code NUMBER
VARIABLE return_msg  VARCHAR2(30)
```

**Viewing Values in Bind Variables**

You can reference the bind variable using SQL Developer and view its value using the `PRINT` command.
Bind Variables (continued)

Example

You can reference a bind variable in a PL/SQL program by preceding the variable with a colon. For example, the following PL/SQL block creates and uses the bind variable b_result. The output resulting from the PRINT command is shown below the code.

```plsql
VARIABLE b_result NUMBER
BEGIN
    SELECT (SALARY*12) + NVL(COMMISSION_PCT,0) INTO :b_result
    FROM employees WHERE employee_id = 144;
END;
/
PRINT b_result
```

Note: If you are creating a bind variable of the NUMBER type, you cannot specify the precision and scale. However, you can specify the size for character strings. An Oracle NUMBER is stored in the same way regardless of the dimension. The Oracle Server uses the same number of bytes to store 7, 70, and .0734. It is not practical to calculate the size of the Oracle number representation from the number format, so the code always allocates the bytes needed. With character strings, the user has to specify the size so that the required number of bytes can be allocated.
Referencing Bind Variables

Example:

```plsql
VARIABLE b_emp_salary NUMBER
BEGIN
    SELECT salary INTO :b_emp_salary
    FROM employees WHERE employee_id = 178;
END;
/
PRINT b_emp_salary
SELECT first_name, last_name
FROM employees
WHERE salary=:b_emp_salary;
```

Output

Referencing Bind Variables

As stated previously, after you create a bind variable, you can reference that variable in any other SQL statement or PL/SQL program.

In the example, `b_emp_salary` is created as a bind variable in the PL/SQL block. Then, it is used in the `SELECT` statement that follows.

When you execute the PL/SQL block shown in the slide, you see the following output:

- The `PRINT` command executes:

  ```
  b_emp_salary
  ------------------
  7000
  ```

- Then, the output of the SQL statement follows:

  ```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST_NAME</th>
<th>LAST_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oliver</td>
<td>Tuvault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarath</td>
<td>Sewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimberely</td>
<td>Grant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  ```

  3 rows selected

**Note:** To display all bind variables, use the `PRINT` command without a variable.
Using **AUTOPRINT** with Bind Variables

Use the `SET AUTOPRINT ON` command to automatically display the bind variables used in a successful PL/SQL block.

**Example**

In the code example:

- A bind variable named `b_emp_salary` is created and **AUTOPRINT** is turned on.
- A variable named `v_empno` is declared, and a substitution variable is used to receive user input.
- Finally, the bind variable and temporary variables are used in the executable section of the PL/SQL block.

When a valid employee number is entered—in this case 178—the output of the bind variable is automatically printed. The bind variable contains the salary for the employee number that is provided by the user.
Quiz

The %TYPE attribute:

1. Is used to declare a variable according to a database column definition
2. Is used to declare a variable according to a collection of columns in a database table or view
3. Is used to declare a variable according to the definition of another declared variable
4. Is prefixed with the database table and column name or the name of the declared variable

Answer: 1, 3, 4

The %TYPE Attribute

PL/SQL variables are usually declared to hold and manipulate data stored in a database. When you declare PL/SQL variables to hold column values, you must ensure that the variable is of the correct data type and precision. If it is not, a PL/SQL error occurs during execution. If you have to design large subprograms, this can be time consuming and error prone.

Rather than hard-coding the data type and precision of a variable, you can use the %TYPE attribute to declare a variable according to another previously declared variable or database column. The %TYPE attribute is most often used when the value stored in the variable is derived from a table in the database. When you use the %TYPE attribute to declare a variable, you should prefix it with the database table and column name. If you refer to a previously declared variable, prefix the variable name of the previously declared variable to the variable being declared. The benefit of %TYPE is that you do not have to change the variable if the column is altered. Also, if the variable is used in any calculations, you need not worry about its precision.

The %ROWTYPE Attribute

The %ROWTYPE attribute is used to declare a record that can hold an entire row of a table or view. You learn about this attribute in the lesson titled “Working with Composite Data Types.”
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned how to:

- Recognize valid and invalid identifiers
- Declare variables in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block
- Initialize variables and use them in the executable section
- Differentiate between scalar and composite data types
- Use the %TYPE attribute
- Use bind variables

Summary

An anonymous PL/SQL block is a basic, unnamed unit of a PL/SQL program. It consists of a set of SQL or PL/SQL statements to perform a logical function. The declarative part is the first part of a PL/SQL block and is used for declaring objects such as variables, constants, cursors, and definitions of error situations called exceptions.

In this lesson, you learned how to declare variables in the declarative section. You saw some of the guidelines for declaring variables. You learned how to initialize variables when you declare them.

The executable part of a PL/SQL block is the mandatory part and contains SQL and PL/SQL statements for querying and manipulating data. You learned how to initialize variables in the executable section and also how to use them and manipulate the values of variables.
Practice 2: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

- Determining valid identifiers
- Determining valid variable declarations
- Declaring variables within an anonymous block
- Using the `%TYPE` attribute to declare variables
- Declaring and printing a bind variable
- Executing a PL/SQL block

Practice 2: Overview

Exercises 1, 2, and 3 are paper based.
Writing Executable Statements
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Identify lexical units in a PL/SQL block
- Use built-in SQL functions in PL/SQL
- Describe when implicit conversions take place and when explicit conversions have to be dealt with
- Write nested blocks and qualify variables with labels
- Write readable code with appropriate indentation
- Use sequences in PL/SQL expressions

Objectives

You learned how to declare variables and write executable statements in a PL/SQL block. In this lesson, you learn how lexical units make up a PL/SQL block. You learn to write nested blocks. You also learn about the scope and visibility of variables in nested blocks and about qualifying variables with labels.
Agenda

- Writing executable statements in a PL/SQL block
- Writing nested blocks
- Using operators and developing readable code
Lexical Units in a PL/SQL Block

Lexical units:
• Are building blocks of any PL/SQL block
• Are sequences of characters including letters, numerals, tabs, spaces, returns, and symbols
• Can be classified as:
  – Identifiers: v_fname, c_percent
  – Delimiters: ; , +, –
  – Literals: John, 428, True
  – Comments: --, /* */

Lexical Units in a PL/SQL Block
Lexical units include letters, numerals, special characters, tabs, spaces, returns, and symbols.

• **Identifiers:** Identifiers are the names given to PL/SQL objects. You learned to identify valid and invalid identifiers. Recall that keywords cannot be used as identifiers.

  **Quoted identifiers:**
  - Make identifiers case-sensitive.
  - Include characters such as spaces.
  - Use reserved words.

  Examples:
  "begin date" DATE;
  "end date"   DATE;
  "exception thrown" BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE;

  All subsequent usage of these variables should have double quotation marks. However, use of quoted identifiers is not recommended.

• **Delimiters:** Delimiters are symbols that have special meaning. You already learned that the semicolon (;) is used to terminate a SQL or PL/SQL statement. Therefore, ; is an example of a delimiter.

  For more information, refer to the *PL/SQL User’s Guide and Reference*. 
Lexical Units in a PL/SQL Block (continued)

- **Delimiters (continued)**
  Delimiters are simple or compound symbols that have special meaning in PL/SQL.

  **Simple symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Addition operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>Subtraction/negation operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Multiplication operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>Division operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>Equality operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>Remote access indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>;</td>
<td>Statement terminator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  **Compound symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>Inequality operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>Inequality operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--</td>
<td>Single-line comment indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/*</td>
<td>Beginning comment delimiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/</td>
<td>Ending comment delimiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:=</td>
<td>Assignment operator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This is only a subset and not a complete list of delimiters.

- **_literals:** Any value that is assigned to a variable is a literal. Any character, numeral, Boolean, or date value that is not an identifier is a literal. Literals are classified as:
  - **Character literals:** All string literals have the data type `CHAR` or `VARCHAR2` and are, therefore, called character literals (for example, `John` and `12C`).
  - **Numeric literals:** A numeric literal represents an integer or real value (for example, `428` and `1.276`).
  - **Boolean literals:** Values that are assigned to Boolean variables are Boolean literals. `TRUE`, `FALSE`, and `NULL` are Boolean literals or keywords.

- **Comments:** It is good programming practice to explain what a piece of code is trying to achieve. However, when you include the explanation in a PL/SQL block, the compiler cannot interpret these instructions. Therefore, there should be a way in which you can indicate that these instructions need not be compiled. Comments are mainly used for this purpose. Any instruction that is commented is not interpreted by the compiler.
  - Two hyphens (---) are used to comment a single line.
  - The beginning and ending comment delimiters (`/*` and `*/`) are used to comment multiple lines.
PL/SQL Block Syntax and Guidelines

• Using Literals
  – Character and date literals must be enclosed in single quotation marks.
  – Numbers can be simple values or in scientific notation.

```plsql
v_name := 'Henderson';
```

• Formatting Code: Statements can span several lines.

```sql
DECLARE
  v_fname VARCHAR2(20); 
BEGIN
  select first_name into v_fname
  from employees
  where employee_id = 100;
END;
```

Using Literals

A literal is an explicit numeric, character string, date, or Boolean value that is not represented by an identifier.

• Character literals include all printable characters in the PL/SQL character set: letters, numerals, spaces, and special symbols.
• Numeric literals can be represented either by a simple value (for example, \(-32.5\)) or in scientific notation (for example, \(2E5\) means \(2 \times 10^5 = 200,000\)).

Formatting Code

In a PL/SQL block, a SQL statement can span several lines (as shown in example 3 in the slide). You can format an unformatted SQL statement (as shown in example 1 in the slide) by using the SQL Worksheet shortcut menu. Right-click the active SQL Worksheet and, in the shortcut menu that appears, select the Format option (as shown in example 2).

Note: You can also use the shortcut key combination of Ctrl + F7 to format your code.
Commenting Code

- Prefix single-line comments with two hyphens (``--``).
- Place a block comment between the symbols `/*` and `*/`.

Example:

```plsql
DECLARE
    ...;
    v_annual_sal NUMBER (9,2);
BEGIN
    /* Compute the annual salary based on the monthly salary input from the user */
    v_annual_sal := monthly_sal * 12;
    -- The following line displays the annual salary
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_annual_sal);
END;
/
```

Commenting Code

You should comment code to document each phase and to assist debugging. In PL/SQL code:

- A single-line comment is commonly prefixed with two hyphens (``--``)
- You can also enclose a comment between the symbols `/*` and `*/`

**Note:** For multiline comments, you can either precede each comment line with two hyphens, or use the block comment format.

Comments are strictly informational and do not enforce any conditions or behavior on the logic or data. Well-placed comments are extremely valuable for code readability and future code maintenance.
SQL Functions in PL/SQL

- Available in procedural statements:
  - Single-row functions
- Not available in procedural statements:
  - `DECODE`
  - Group functions

SQL provides several predefined functions that can be used in SQL statements. Most of these functions (such as single-row number and character functions, data type conversion functions, and date and time-stamp functions) are valid in PL/SQL expressions.

The following functions are not available in procedural statements:
- `DECODE`
- Group functions: `AVG`, `MIN`, `MAX`, `COUNT`, `SUM`, `STDDEV`, and `VARIANCE`

Group functions apply to groups of rows in a table and are, therefore, available only in SQL statements in a PL/SQL block. The functions mentioned here are only a subset of the complete list.
SQL Functions in PL/SQL: Examples

• Get the length of a string:

```sql
v_desc_size INTEGER(5);
v_prod_description VARCHAR2(70):='You can use this product with your radios for higher frequency';

-- get the length of the string in prod_description
v_desc_size:= LENGTH(v_prod_description);
```

• Get the number of months an employee has worked:

```sql
v_tenure:= MONTHS_BETWEEN (CURRENT_DATE, v_hiredate);
```

SQL Functions in PL/SQL: Examples

You can use SQL functions to manipulate data. These functions are grouped into the following categories:

• Number
• Character
• Conversion
• Date
• Miscellaneous
Using Sequences in PL/SQL Expressions

Starting in 11g:

```plsql
DECLARE
  v_new_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  v_new_id := my_seq.NEXTVAL;
END;
/
```

Before 11g:

```plsql
DECLARE
  v_new_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  SELECT my_seq.NEXTVAL INTO v_new_id FROM Dual;
END;
/
```

Accessing Sequence Values

In Oracle Database 11g, you can use the NEXTVAL and CURRVAL pseudocolumns in any PL/SQL context, where an expression of the NUMBER data type may legally appear. Although the old style of using a SELECT statement to query a sequence is still valid, it is recommended that you do not use it.

Before Oracle Database 11g, you were forced to write a SQL statement in order to use a sequence object value in a PL/SQL subroutine. Typically, you would write a SELECT statement to reference the pseudocolumns of NEXTVAL and CURRVAL to obtain a sequence number. This method created a usability problem.

In Oracle Database 11g, the limitation of forcing you to write a SQL statement to retrieve a sequence value is eliminated. With the sequence enhancement feature:

- Sequence usability is improved
- The developer has to type less
- The resulting code is clearer
Data Type Conversion

- Converts data to comparable data types
- Is of two types:
  - Implicit conversion
  - Explicit conversion
- Functions:
  - TO_CHAR
  - TO_DATE
  - TO_NUMBER
  - TO_TIMESTAMP

Data Type Conversion

In any programming language, converting one data type to another is a common requirement. PL/SQL can handle such conversions with scalar data types. Data type conversions can be of two types:

**Implicit conversions:** PL/SQL attempts to convert data types dynamically if they are mixed in a statement. Consider the following example:

```plsql
DECLARE
  v_salary NUMBER(6) := 6000;
  v_sal_hike VARCHAR2(5) := '1000';
  v_total_salary v_salary%TYPE;
BEGIN
  v_total_salary := v_salary + v_sal_hike;
END;
/
```

In this example, the `sal_hike` variable is of the `VARCHAR2` type. When calculating the total salary, PL/SQL first converts `sal_hike` to `NUMBER`, and then performs the operation. The result is of the `NUMBER` type.

Implicit conversions can be between:
- Characters and numbers
- Characters and dates
Data Type Conversion (continued)

Explicit conversions: To convert values from one data type to another, use built-in functions. For example, to convert a CHAR value to a DATE or NUMBER value, use TO_DATE or TO_NUMBER, respectively.
Data Type Conversion

1. **-- implicit data type conversion**
   
   ```
   v_date_of_joining DATE:= '02-Feb-2000';
   ```

2. **-- error in data type conversion**
   
   ```
   v_date_of_joining DATE:= 'February 02,2000';
   ```

3. **-- explicit data type conversion**
   
   ```
   v_date_of_joining DATE:= TO_DATE('February 02,2000','Month DD, YYYY');
   ```

Data Type Conversion (continued)

Note the three examples of implicit and explicit conversions of the `DATE` data type in the slide:

1. Because the string literal being assigned to `date_of_joining` is in the default format, this example performs implicit conversion and assigns the specified date to `date_of_joining`.
2. The PL/SQL returns an error because the date that is being assigned is not in the default format.
3. The `TO_DATE` function is used to explicitly convert the given date in a particular format and assign it to the `DATE` data type variable `date_of_joining`. 
Agenda

• Writing executable statements in a PL/SQL block
• Writing nested blocks
• Using operators and developing readable code
Nested Blocks

PL/SQL blocks can be nested.

- An executable section (`BEGIN ... END`) can contain nested blocks.
- An exception section can contain nested blocks.

Being procedural gives PL/SQL the ability to nest statements. You can nest blocks wherever an executable statement is allowed, thus making the nested block a statement. If your executable section has code for many logically related functionalities to support multiple business requirements, you can divide the executable section into smaller blocks. The exception section can also contain nested blocks.
Nested Blocks: Example

DECLARE
  v_outer_variable VARCHAR2(20):='GLOBAL VARIABLE';
BEGIN
  DECLARE
    v_inner_variable VARCHAR2(20):='LOCAL VARIABLE';
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_inner_variable);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_outer_variable);
  END;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_outer_variable);
END;

Nested Blocks (continued)

The example shown in the slide has an outer (parent) block and a nested (child) block. The v_outer_variable variable is declared in the outer block and the v_inner_variable variable is declared in the inner block.

v_outer_variable is local to the outer block but global to the inner block. When you access this variable in the inner block, PL/SQL first looks for a local variable in the inner block with that name. There is no variable with the same name in the inner block, so PL/SQL looks for the variable in the outer block. Therefore, v_outer_variable is considered to be the global variable for all the enclosing blocks. You can access this variable in the inner block as shown in the slide. Variables declared in a PL/SQL block are considered local to that block and global to all its subblocks.

v_inner_variable is local to the inner block and is not global because the inner block does not have any nested blocks. This variable can be accessed only within the inner block. If PL/SQL does not find the variable declared locally, it looks upward in the declarative section of the parent blocks. PL/SQL does not look downward in the child blocks.
Variable Scope and Visibility

The output of the block shown in the slide is as follows:

  anonymous block completed
  Father's Name: Patrick
  Date of Birth: 12-DEC-02
  Child's Name: Mike
  Date of Birth: 20-APR-72

Examine the date of birth that is printed for father and child. The output does not provide the correct information, because the scope and visibility of the variables are not applied correctly.

- The *scope* of a variable is the portion of the program in which the variable is declared and is accessible.
- The *visibility* of a variable is the portion of the program where the variable can be accessed without using a qualifier.

**Scope**

- The `v_father_name` variable and the first occurrence of the `v_date_of_birth` variable are declared in the outer block. These variables have the scope of the block in which they are declared. Therefore, the scope of these variables is limited to the outer block.
Variable Scope and Visibility (continued)

Scope (continued)
- The v_child_name and v_date_of_birth variables are declared in the inner block or the nested block. These variables are accessible only within the nested block and are not accessible in the outer block. When a variable is out of scope, PL/SQL frees the memory used to store the variable; therefore, these variables cannot be referenced.

Visibility
- The v_date_of_birth variable declared in the outer block has scope even in the inner block. However, this variable is not visible in the inner block because the inner block has a local variable with the same name.
  1. Examine the code in the executable section of the PL/SQL block. You can print the father’s name, the child’s name, and the date of birth. Only the child’s date of birth can be printed here because the father’s date of birth is not visible.
  2. The father’s date of birth is visible in the outer block and, therefore, can be printed.

Note: You cannot have variables with the same name in a block. However, as shown in this example, you can declare variables with the same name in two different blocks (nested blocks). The two items represented by identifiers are distinct; changes in one do not affect the other.
Using a Qualifier with Nested Blocks

A qualifier is a label given to a block. You can use a qualifier to access the variables that have scope but are not visible.

Example
In the code example:
- The outer block is labeled outer
- Within the inner block, the outer qualifier is used to access the v_date_of_birth variable that is declared in the outer block. Therefore, the father’s date of birth and the child’s date of birth can both be printed from within the inner block.
- The output of the code in the slide shows the correct information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>anonymous block completed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Father's Name: Patrick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Birth: 20-Apr-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child's Name: Mike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Birth: 12-Dec-02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Labeling is not limited to the outer block. You can label any block.
Challenge: Determining Variable Scope

Evaluate the PL/SQL block in the slide. Determine each of the following values according to the rules of scoping:

1. Value of `v_message` at position 1
2. Value of `v_total_comp` at position 2
3. Value of `v_comm` at position 1
4. Value of `outer.v_comm` at position 1
5. Value of `v_comm` at position 2
6. Value of `v_message` at position 2
Answers: Determining Variable Scope

Answers to the questions of scope are as follows:

1. Value of v_message at position 1: **CLERK not eligible for commission**

2. Value of v_total_comp at position 2: **Error. v_total_comp is not visible here because it is defined within the inner block.**

3. Value of v_comm at position 1: **0**

4. Value of outer.v_comm at position 1: **12000**

5. Value of v_comm at position 2: **15000**

6. Value of v_message at position 2: **SALESMANCLERK not eligible for commission**
Agenda

- Writing executable statements in a PL/SQL block
- Writing nested blocks
- Using operators and developing readable code
Operators in PL/SQL

- Logical
- Arithmetic
- Concatenation
- Parentheses to control order of operations

Same as in SQL

- Exponential operator (**)

Operators in PL/SQL

The operations in an expression are performed in a particular order depending on their precedence (priority). The following table shows the default order of operations from high priority to low priority:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>**</td>
<td>Exponentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+, -</td>
<td>Identity, negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*, /</td>
<td>Multiplication, division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=, &lt;=, &gt;, &gt;=, !=,</td>
<td>Addition, subtraction,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concatenation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS NULL, LIKE,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BETWEEN, IN</td>
<td>Comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>Logical negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>Conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Inclusion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operators in PL/SQL: Examples

- Increment the counter for a loop.
  \[
  \text{loop\_count} := \text{loop\_count} + 1; \\
  \]
- Set the value of a Boolean flag.
  \[
  \text{good\_sal} := \text{sal} \text{ BETWEEN } 50000 \text{ AND } 150000; \\
  \]
- Validate whether an employee number contains a value.
  \[
  \text{valid} := (\text{empno IS NOT NULL}); \\
  \]

Operators in PL/SQL (continued)
When you are working with nulls, you can avoid some common mistakes by keeping in mind the following rules:
- Comparisons involving nulls always yield NULL.
- Applying the logical operator NOT to a null yields NULL.
- In conditional control statements, if the condition yields NULL, its associated sequence of statements is not executed.
Programming Guidelines

Make code maintenance easier by:

- Documenting code with comments
- Developing a case convention for the code
- Developing naming conventions for identifiers and other objects
- Enhancing readability by indenting

Programming Guidelines

Follow programming guidelines shown in the slide to produce clear code and reduce maintenance when developing a PL/SQL block.

Code Conventions

The following table provides guidelines for writing code in uppercase or lowercase characters to help distinguish keywords from named objects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Case Convention</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL statements</td>
<td>Uppercase</td>
<td>SELECT, INSERT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL/SQL keywords</td>
<td>Uppercase</td>
<td>DECLARE, BEGIN, IF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data types</td>
<td>Uppercase</td>
<td>VARCHAR2, BOOLEAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifiers and parameters</td>
<td>Lowercase</td>
<td>v_sal, emp_cursor, g_sal, p_empno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database tables</td>
<td>Lowercase, plural</td>
<td>employees, departments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database columns</td>
<td>Lowercase, singular</td>
<td>employee_id, department_id</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indenting Code

For clarity, indent each level of code.

```
BEGIN
  IF x=0 THEN
    y:=1;
  END IF;
END;
/
```

```
DECLARE
depthno       NUMBER(4);
location_id   NUMBER(4);
BEGIN
  SELECT department_id,
       location_id
  INTO depthno,
       location_id
  FROM departments
  WHERE department_name = 'Sales';
  ...
END;
/
```

Indenting Code
For clarity and enhanced readability, indent each level of code. To show structure, you can divide lines by using carriage returns and you can indent lines by using spaces and tabs. Compare the following IF statements for readability:

```
IF x>y THEN max:=x;ELSE max:=y;END IF;
```

```
IF x > y THEN
  max := x;
ELSE
  max := y;
END IF;
```
Quiz

You can use most SQL single-row functions such as number, character, conversion, and date single-row functions in PL/SQL expressions.

1. True
2. False

Answer: 1

SQL Functions in PL/SQL

SQL provides several predefined functions that can be used in SQL statements. Most of these functions (such as single-row number and character functions, data type conversion functions, and date and time-stamp functions) are valid in PL/SQL expressions.

The following functions are not available in procedural statements:

- DECODE
- Group functions: AVG, MIN, MAX, COUNT, SUM, STDDEV, and VARIANCE

Group functions apply to groups of rows in a table and are, therefore, available only in SQL statements in a PL/SQL block. The functions mentioned here are only a subset of the complete list.
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned how to:

- Identify lexical units in a PL/SQL block
- Use built-in SQL functions in PL/SQL
- Write nested blocks to break logically related functionalities
- Decide when to perform explicit conversions
- Qualify variables in nested blocks
- Use sequences in PL/SQL expressions

Summary

Because PL/SQL is an extension of SQL, the general syntax rules that apply to SQL also apply to PL/SQL.

A block can have any number of nested blocks defined within its executable part. Blocks defined within a block are called subblocks. You can nest blocks only in the executable part of a block. Because the exception section is also a part of the executable section, it can also contain nested blocks. Ensure correct scope and visibility of the variables when you have nested blocks. Avoid using the same identifiers in the parent and child blocks.

Most of the functions available in SQL are also valid in PL/SQL expressions. Conversion functions convert a value from one data type to another. Comparison operators compare one expression with another. The result is always TRUE, FALSE, or NULL. Typically, you use comparison operators in conditional control statements and in the WHERE clause of SQL data manipulation statements. The relational operators enable you to compare arbitrarily complex expressions.
Practice 3: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

- Reviewing scoping and nesting rules
- Writing and testing PL/SQL blocks

Practice 3: Overview

Exercises 1 and 2 are paper based.
Interacting with Oracle Database Server:
SQL Statements in PL/SQL Programs
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

- Determine the SQL statements that can be directly included in a PL/SQL executable block
- Manipulate data with DML statements in PL/SQL
- Use transaction control statements in PL/SQL
- Make use of the INTO clause to hold the values returned by a SQL statement
- Differentiate between implicit cursors and explicit cursors
- Use SQL cursor attributes

Objectives

In this lesson, you learn to embed standard SQL SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and MERGE statements in PL/SQL blocks. You learn how to include data definition language (DDL) and transaction control statements in PL/SQL. You learn the need for cursors and differentiate between the two types of cursors. The lesson also presents the various SQL cursor attributes that can be used with implicit cursors.
Agenda

- Retrieving data with PL/SQL
- Manipulating data with PL/SQL
- Introducing SQL cursors
SQL Statements in PL/SQL

- Retrieve a row from the database by using the **SELECT** command.
- Make changes to rows in the database by using **DML commands**.
- Control a transaction with the **COMMIT**, **ROLLBACK**, or **SAVEPOINT** command.

---

**SQL Statements in PL/SQL**

In a PL/SQL block, you use SQL statements to retrieve and modify data from the database table. PL/SQL supports data manipulation language (DML) and transaction control commands. You can use DML commands to modify the data in a database table. However, remember the following points while using DML statements and transaction control commands in PL/SQL blocks:

- The **END** keyword signals the end of a PL/SQL block, not the end of a transaction. Just as a block can span multiple transactions, a transaction can span multiple blocks.
- PL/SQL does not directly support data definition language (DDL) statements such as **CREATE TABLE**, **ALTER TABLE**, or **DROP TABLE**. PL/SQL supports early binding, which cannot happen if applications have to create database objects at run time by passing values. DDL statements cannot be directly executed. These statements are dynamic SQL statements. Dynamic SQL statements are built as character strings at run time and can contain placeholders for parameters. Therefore, you can use dynamic SQL to execute your DDL statements in PL/SQL. The details of working with dynamic SQL is covered in the course titled *Oracle Database 11g: Develop PL/SQL Program Units*.
- PL/SQL does not directly support data control language (DCL) statements such as **GRANT** or **REVOKE**. You can use dynamic SQL to execute them.
SELECT Statements in PL/SQL

Retrieve data from the database with a SELECT statement.

Syntax:

```
SELECT select_list
INTO {variable_name[, variable_name]...}
| record_name
FROM table
[WHERE condition];
```

**Guidelines for Retrieving Data in PL/SQL**

- Terminate each SQL statement with a semicolon (;).
- Every value retrieved must be stored in a variable by using the INTO clause.
- The WHERE clause is optional and can be used to specify input variables, constants, literals, and PL/SQL expressions. However, when you use the INTO clause, you should fetch only one row; using the WHERE clause is required in such cases.
SELECT Statements in PL/SQL (continued)

- Specify the same number of variables in the INTO clause as the number of database columns in the SELECT clause. Be sure that they correspond positionally and that their data types are compatible.
- Use group functions, such as SUM, in a SQL statement, because group functions apply to groups of rows in a table.
**SELECT Statements in PL/SQL**

- The `INTO` clause is required.
- Queries must return only one row.

```
DECLARE
    v_fname VARCHAR2(25);
BEGIN
    SELECT first_name INTO v_fname
    FROM employees WHERE employee_id=200;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' First Name is : ' || v_fname);
END;
/
```

**SELECT Statements in PL/SQL (continued)**

**INTO Clause**

The `INTO` clause is mandatory and occurs between the `SELECT` and `FROM` clauses. It is used to specify the names of variables that hold the values that SQL returns from the `SELECT` clause. You must specify one variable for each item selected, and the order of the variables must correspond with the items selected.

Use the `INTO` clause to populate either PL/SQL variables or host variables.

**Queries Must Return Only One Row**

`SELECT` statements within a PL/SQL block fall into the ANSI classification of embedded SQL, for which the following rule applies: Queries must return only one row. A query that returns more than one row or no row generates an error.

PL/SQL manages these errors by raising standard exceptions, which you can handle in the exception section of the block with the `NO_DATA_FOUND` and `TOO_MANY_ROWS` exceptions. Include a `WHERE` condition in the SQL statement so that the statement returns a single row. You learn about exception handling in the lesson titled “Handling Exceptions.”

**Note:** In all cases where `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` is used in the code examples, the `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` statement precedes the block.
**SELECT Statements in PL/SQL (continued)**

**How to Retrieve Multiple Rows from a Table and Operate on the Data**

A `SELECT` statement with the `INTO` clause can retrieve only one row at a time. If your requirement is to retrieve multiple rows and operate on the data, you can make use of explicit cursors. You are introduced to cursors later in this lesson and learn about explicit cursors in the lesson titled “Using Explicit Cursors.”
Retrieving Data in PL/SQL: Example

Retrieve hire_date and salary for the specified employee.

```plsql
DECLARE
  v_emp_hiredate   employees.hire_date%TYPE;
  v_emp_salary     employees.salary%TYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT   hire_date, salary
  INTO     v_emp_hiredate, v_emp_salary
  FROM     employees
  WHERE    employee_id = 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Hire date is :'|| v_emp_hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Salary is :'|| v_emp_salary);
END;
/
```

Retrieving Data in PL/SQL

In the example in the slide, the `v_emp_hiredate` and `v_emp_salary` variables are declared in the declarative section of the PL/SQL block. In the executable section, the values of the `hire_date` and `salary` columns for the employee with the `employee_id` 100 are retrieved from the `employees` table. Next, they are stored in the `emp_hiredate` and `emp_salary` variables, respectively. Observe how the `INTO` clause, along with the `SELECT` statement, retrieves the database column values and stores them in the PL/SQL variables.

**Note:** The `SELECT` statement retrieves `hire_date`, and then `salary`. The variables in the `INTO` clause must thus be in the same order. For example, if you exchange `v_emp_hiredate` and `v_emp_salary` in the statement in the slide, the statement results in an error.
Retrieve the sum of salaries for all the employees in the specified department.

Example:

```sql
DECLARE
    v_sum_sal   NUMBER(10,2);
    v_deptno    NUMBER NOT NULL := 60;
BEGIN
    SELECT SUM(salary)  -- group function
    INTO v_sum_sal  FROM employees
    WHERE     department_id = v_deptno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('The sum of salary is ' || v_sum_sal);
END;
```

Anonymous block completed
The sum of salary is 28800

Retrieving Data in PL/SQL (continued)

In the example in the slide, the `v_sum_sal` and `v_deptno` variables are declared in the declarative section of the PL/SQL block. In the executable section, the total salary for the employees in the department with `department_id` 60 is computed using the SQL aggregate function `SUM`. The calculated total salary is assigned to the `v_sum_sal` variable.

**Note:** Group functions cannot be used in PL/SQL syntax. They must be used in SQL statements within a PL/SQL block as shown in the example in the slide.

For instance, you cannot use group functions using the following syntax:

```sql
V_sum_sal := SUM(employees.salary);
```
Naming Ambiguities

In potentially ambiguous SQL statements, the names of database columns take precedence over the names of local variables.

The example shown in the slide is defined as follows: Retrieve the hire date and today’s date from the employees table for employee_id 176. This example raises an unhandled runtime exception because, in the WHERE clause, the PL/SQL variable names are the same as the database column names in the employees table.

The following DELETE statement removes all employees from the employees table, where the last name is not null (not just “King”), because the Oracle Server assumes that both occurrences of last_name in the WHERE clause refer to the database column:

```
DECLARE
    last_name VARCHAR2(25) := 'King';
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM employees WHERE last_name = last_name;
    . . .
```
Naming Conventions

- Use a naming convention to avoid ambiguity in the WHERE clause.
- Avoid using database column names as identifiers.
- Syntax errors can arise because PL/SQL checks the database first for a column in the table.
- The names of local variables and formal parameters take precedence over the names of database tables.
- The names of database table columns take precedence over the names of local variables.

**Naming Conventions**

Avoid ambiguity in the WHERE clause by adhering to a naming convention that distinguishes database column names from PL/SQL variable names.
- Database columns and identifiers should have distinct names.
- Syntax errors can arise because PL/SQL checks the database first for a column in the table.

**Note:** There is no possibility of ambiguity in the SELECT clause because any identifier in the SELECT clause must be a database column name. There is no possibility of ambiguity in the INTO clause because identifiers in the INTO clause must be PL/SQL variables. The possibility of confusion is present only in the WHERE clause.
Agenda

- Retrieving data with PL/SQL
- Manipulating data with PL/SQL
- Introducing SQL cursors
Using PL/SQL to Manipulate Data

Make changes to database tables by using DML commands:

- INSERT
- UPDATE
- DELETE
- MERGE

You manipulate data in the database by using DML commands. You can issue DML commands such as INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and MERGE without restriction in PL/SQL. Row locks (and table locks) are released by including the COMMIT or ROLLBACK statements in the PL/SQL code.

- The INSERT statement adds new rows to the table.
- The UPDATE statement modifies existing rows in the table.
- The DELETE statement removes rows from the table.
- The MERGE statement selects rows from one table to update or insert into another table.
  The decision whether to update or insert into the target table is based on a condition in the ON clause.

**Note**: MERGE is a deterministic statement. That is, you cannot update the same row of the target table multiple times in the same MERGE statement. You must have INSERT and UPDATE object privileges on the target table and SELECT privilege on the source table.
Inserting Data: Example

Add new employee information to the EMPLOYEES table.

BEGIN
  INSERT INTO employees
    (employee_id, first_name, last_name, email, hire_date, job_id, salary)
  VALUES(employees_seq.NEXTVAL, 'Ruth', 'Cores', 'RCORES', CURRENT_DATE, 'AD_ASST', 4000);
END;
/

Inserting Data

In the example in the slide, an INSERT statement is used within a PL/SQL block to insert a record into the employees table. While using the INSERT command in a PL/SQL block, you can:

- Use SQL functions such as USER and CURRENT_DATE
- Generate primary key values by using existing database sequences
- Derive values in the PL/SQL block

Note: The data in the employees table needs to remain unchanged. Even though the employees table is not read-only, inserting, updating, and deleting are not allowed on this table to ensure consistency of output, as shown in code example code_04_15_s.sql.
Updating Data: Example

Increase the salary of all employees who are stock clerks.

```
DECLARE
    sal_increase employees.salary%TYPE := 800;
BEGIN
    UPDATE employees
    SET salary = salary + sal_increase
    WHERE job_id = 'ST_CLERK';
END;
/
```

The following table shows the salaries before the update:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST_NAME</th>
<th>SALARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dalis</td>
<td>4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irene</td>
<td>3500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James</td>
<td>3200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steven</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

...)

The following table shows the salaries after the update:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST_NAME</th>
<th>SALARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curtis</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Randall</td>
<td>5400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>3300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20 rows selected

Updating Data

There may be ambiguity in the SET clause of the UPDATE statement because, although the identifier on the left of the assignment operator is always a database column, the identifier on the right can be either a database column or a PL/SQL variable. Recall that if column names and identifier names are identical in the WHERE clause, the Oracle Server looks to the database first for the name.

Remember that the WHERE clause is used to determine the rows that are affected. If no rows are modified, no error occurs (unlike the SELECT statement in PL/SQL).

**Note:** PL/SQL variable assignments always use :=, and SQL column assignments always use =.
Deleting Data: Example

Delete rows that belong to department 10 from the employees table.

```sql
DECLARE
    deptno employees.department_id%TYPE := 10;
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM employees
    WHERE department_id = deptno;
END;
/
```

Deleting Data

The DELETE statement removes unwanted rows from a table. If the WHERE clause is not used, all the rows in a table can be removed if there are no integrity constraints.
Merging Rows

Insert or update rows in the `copy_emp` table to match the `employees` table.

```
BEGIN
MERGE INTO copy_emp c
  USING employees e
  ON (e.employee_id = c.empno)
WHEN MATCHED THEN
  UPDATE SET
    c.first_name     = e.first_name,
    c.last_name      = e.last_name,
    c.email          = e.email,
    . . .
  WHEN NOT MATCHED THEN
    INSERT VALUES(e.employee_id, e.first_name, e.last_name,
    . . .,e.department_id);
END;
/
```

Merging Rows

The `MERGE` statement inserts or updates rows in one table by using data from another table. Each row is inserted or updated in the target table depending on an equijoin condition.

The example shown matches the `empno` column in the `copy_emp` table to the `employee_id` column in the `employees` table. If a match is found, the row is updated to match the row in the `employees` table. If the row is not found, it is inserted into the `copy_emp` table.

The complete example of using `MERGE` in a PL/SQL block is shown on the next page.
Merging Rows (continued)

BEGIN
MERGE INTO copy_emp c
USING employees e
ON (e.employee_id = c.empno)
WHEN MATCHED THEN
  UPDATE SET
    c.first_name     = e.first_name,
    c.last_name      = e.last_name,
    c.email          = e.email,
    c.phone_number   = e.phone_number,
    c.hire_date      = e.hire_date,
    c.job_id         = e.job_id,
    c.salary         = e.salary,
    c.commission_pct = e.commission_pct,
    c.manager_id     = e.manager_id,
    c.department_id  = e.department_id
WHEN NOT MATCHED THEN
  INSERT VALUES(e.employee_id,  e.first_name, e.last_name,
                 e.email, e.phone_number, e.hire_date, e.job_id,
                 e.salary, e.commission_pct, e.manager_id,
                 e.department_id);
END;
/
Agenda

- Retrieving data with PL/SQL
- Manipulating data with PL/SQL
- Introducing SQL cursors
SQL Cursor

- A cursor is a pointer to the private memory area allocated by the Oracle Server. It is used to handle the result set of a `SELECT` statement.

- There are two types of cursors: implicit and explicit.
  - **Implicit**: Created and managed internally by the Oracle Server to process SQL statements
  - **Explicit**: Declared explicitly by the programmer

Where Does the Oracle Server Process SQL Statements?

The Oracle Server allocates a private memory area called the *context area* for processing SQL statements. The SQL statement is parsed and processed in this area. The information required for processing and the information retrieved after processing are all stored in this area. You have no control over this area because it is internally managed by the Oracle Server.

A cursor is a pointer to the context area. However, this cursor is an implicit cursor and is automatically managed by the Oracle Server. When the executable block issues a SQL statement, PL/SQL creates an implicit cursor.

Types of Cursors

There are two types of cursors:

- **Implicit**: An *implicit cursor* is created and managed by the Oracle Server. You do not have access to it. The Oracle Server creates such a cursor when it has to execute a SQL statement.
SQL Cursor (continued)

Types of Cursors (continued)

- **Explicit**: As a programmer, you may want to retrieve multiple rows from a database table, have a pointer to each row that is retrieved, and work on the rows one at a time. In such cases, you can declare cursors explicitly depending on your business requirements. A cursor that is declared by programmers is called an *explicit cursor*. You declare such a cursor in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block.
SQL Cursor Attributes for Implicit Cursors

Using SQL cursor attributes, you can test the outcome of your SQL statements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL%FOUND</td>
<td>Boolean attribute that evaluates to <strong>TRUE</strong> if the most recent SQL statement affected at least one row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL%NOTFOUND</td>
<td>Boolean attribute that evaluates to <strong>TRUE</strong> if the most recent SQL statement did not affect even one row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL%ROWCOUNT</td>
<td>An integer value that represents the number of rows affected by the most recent SQL statement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

***SQL Cursor Attributes for Implicit Cursors***

SQL cursor attributes enable you to evaluate what happened when an implicit cursor was last used. Use these attributes in PL/SQL statements but not in SQL statements.

You can test the SQL%ROWCOUNT, SQL%FOUND, and SQL%NOTFOUND attributes in the executable section of a block to gather information after the appropriate DML command executes. PL/SQL does not return an error if a DML statement does not affect rows in the underlying table. However, if a SELECT statement does not retrieve any rows, PL/SQL returns an exception.

Observe that the attributes are prefixed with SQL. These cursor attributes are used with implicit cursors that are automatically created by PL/SQL and for which you do not know the names. Therefore, you use SQL instead of the cursor name.

The SQL%NOTFOUND attribute is the opposite of SQL%FOUND. This attribute may be used as the exit condition in a loop. It is useful in UPDATE and DELETE statements when no rows are changed because exceptions are not returned in these cases.

You learn about explicit cursor attributes in the lesson titled “Using Explicit Cursors.”
SQL Cursor Attributes for Implicit Cursors

Delete rows that have the specified employee ID from the employees table. Print the number of rows deleted.

Example:

```sql
DECLARE
    v_rows_deleted VARCHAR2(30)
    v_empno employees.employee_id%TYPE := 176;
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM employees
    WHERE employee_id = v_empno;
    v_rows_deleted := (SQL%ROWCOUNT ||
                       ' row deleted.');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (v_rows_deleted);
END;
```

SQL Cursor Attributes for Implicit Cursors (continued)

The example in the slide deletes a row with employee_id 176 from the employees table. Using the SQL%ROWCOUNT attribute, you can print the number of rows deleted.
Quiz

When using the SELECT statement in PL/SQL, the INTO clause is required and queries can return one or more row.

1. True
2. False

Answer: 2

INTO Clause
The INTO clause is mandatory and occurs between the SELECT and FROM clauses. It is used to specify the names of variables that hold the values that SQL returns from the SELECT clause. You must specify one variable for each item selected, and the order of the variables must correspond with the items selected.

Use the INTO clause to populate either PL/SQL variables or host variables.

Queries Must Return Only One Row
SELECT statements within a PL/SQL block fall into the ANSI classification of embedded SQL, for which the following rule applies: Queries must return only one row. A query that returns more than one row or no row generates an error.

PL/SQL manages these errors by raising standard exceptions, which you can handle in the exception section of the block with the NO_DATA_FOUND and TOO_MANY_ROWS exceptions. Include a WHERE condition in the SQL statement so that the statement returns a single row. You learn about exception handling later in the course.
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned how to:

- Embed DML statements, transaction control statements, and DDL statements in PL/SQL
- Use the INTO clause, which is mandatory for all SELECT statements in PL/SQL
- Differentiate between implicit cursors and explicit cursors
- Use SQL cursor attributes to determine the outcome of SQL statements

Summary

DML commands and transaction control statements can be used in PL/SQL programs without restriction. However, the DDL commands cannot be used directly.

A SELECT statement in a PL/SQL block can return only one row. It is mandatory to use the INTO clause to hold the values retrieved by the SELECT statement.

A cursor is a pointer to the memory area. There are two types of cursors. Implicit cursors are created and managed internally by the Oracle Server to execute SQL statements. You can use SQL cursor attributes with these cursors to determine the outcome of the SQL statement. Explicit cursors are declared by programmers.
Practice 4: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

- Selecting data from a table
- Inserting data into a table
- Updating data in a table
- Deleting a record from a table
Writing Control Structures
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Identify the uses and types of control structures
• Construct an IF statement
• Use CASE statements and CASE expressions
• Construct and identify loop statements
• Use guidelines when using conditional control structures

Objectives

You have learned to write PL/SQL blocks containing declarative and executable sections. You have also learned to include expressions and SQL statements in the executable block.

In this lesson, you learn how to use control structures such as IF statements, CASE expressions, and LOOP structures in a PL/SQL block.
Controlling Flow of Execution

You can change the logical flow of statements within the PL/SQL block with a number of control structures. This lesson addresses four types of PL/SQL control structures: conditional constructs with the `IF` statement, `CASE` expressions, `LOOP` control structures, and the `CONTINUE` statement.
Agenda

• Using IF statements
• Using CASE statements and CASE expressions
• Constructing and identifying loop statements
IF Statement

Syntax:

```
IF condition THEN
    statements;
[ELSIF condition THEN
    statements;]
[ELSE
    statements;]
END IF;
```

IF Statement

The structure of the PL/SQL IF statement is similar to the structure of IF statements in other procedural languages. It allows PL/SQL to perform actions selectively based on conditions. In the syntax:

- **condition**: Is a Boolean variable or expression that returns TRUE, FALSE, or NULL
- **THEN**: Introduces a clause that associates the Boolean expression with the sequence of statements that follows it
- **statements**: Can be one or more PL/SQL or SQL statements. (They may include additional IF statements containing several nested IF, ELSE, and ELSIF statements.) The statements in the THEN clause are executed only if the condition in the associated IF clause evaluates to TRUE.
**IF Statement (continued)**

In the syntax:

- **ELSIF** is a keyword that introduces a Boolean expression (If the first condition yields FALSE or NULL, the ELSIF keyword introduces additional conditions.)

- **ELSE** introduces the default clause that is executed if and only if none of the earlier predicates (introduced by IF and ELSIF) are TRUE. The tests are executed in sequence so that a later predicate that might be true is preempted by an earlier predicate that is true.

- **ENDIF** marks the end of an IF statement

**Note:** ELSIF and ELSE are optional in an IF statement. You can have any number of ELSIF keywords but only one ELSE keyword in your IF statement. END IF marks the end of an IF statement and must be terminated by a semicolon.
Simple IF Statement

The slide shows an example of a simple IF statement with the THEN clause.
- The v_myage variable is initialized to 31.
- The condition for the IF statement returns FALSE because v_myage is not less than 11.
- Therefore, the control never reaches the THEN clause.

Adding Conditional Expressions

An IF statement can have multiple conditional expressions related with logical operators such as AND, OR, and NOT.

For example:

```sql
IF (myfirstname='Christopher' AND v_myage <11)
...
```

The condition uses the AND operator and therefore, evaluates to TRUE only if both conditions are evaluated as TRUE. There is no limitation on the number of conditional expressions. However, these statements must be related with appropriate logical operators.
IF THEN ELSE Statement

DECLARE
  v_myage  number:=31;
BEGIN
  IF v_myage  < 11
    THEN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' I am a child ');
    ELSE
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' I am not a child ');
  END IF;
END;
/

Anonymous block completed
I am not a child

IF THEN ELSE Statement

An ELSE clause is added to the code in the previous slide. The condition has not changed and, therefore, still evaluates to FALSE. Recall that the statements in the THEN clause are executed only if the condition returns TRUE. In this case, the condition returns FALSE and the control moves to the ELSE statement.

The output of the block is shown below the code.
IF ELSIF ELSE Clause

The IF clause may contain multiple ELSIF clauses and an ELSE clause. The example illustrates the following characteristics of these clauses:

- The ELSIF clauses can have conditions, unlike the ELSE clause.
- The condition for ELSIF should be followed by the THEN clause, which is executed if the condition for ELSIF returns TRUE.
- When you have multiple ELSIF clauses, if the first condition is FALSE or NULL, the control shifts to the next ELSIF clause.
- Conditions are evaluated one by one from the top.
- If all conditions are FALSE or NULL, the statements in the ELSE clause are executed.
- The final ELSE clause is optional.

In the example, the output of the block is shown below the code.
**NULL Value in IF Statement**

In the example shown in the slide, the variable `v_myage` is declared but not initialized. The condition in the IF statement returns NULL rather than TRUE or FALSE. In such a case, the control goes to the ELSE statement.

**Guidelines**
- You can perform actions selectively based on conditions that are being met.
- When you write code, remember the spelling of the keywords:
  - ELSIF is one word.
  - END IF is two words.
- If the controlling Boolean condition is TRUE, the associated sequence of statements is executed; if the controlling Boolean condition is FALSE or NULL, the associated sequence of statements is passed over. Any number of ELSIF clauses is permitted.
- Indent the conditionally executed statements for clarity.
Agenda

- Using IF statements
- Using CASE statements and CASE expressions
- Constructing and identifying loop statements
CASE Expressions

- A CASE expression selects a result and returns it.
- To select the result, the CASE expression uses expressions. The value returned by these expressions is used to select one of several alternatives.

```
CASE selector
  WHEN expression1 THEN result1
  WHEN expression2 THEN result2
  ...
  WHEN expressionN THEN resultN
  [ELSE resultN+1]
END;
```

CASE Expressions

A CASE expression returns a result based on one or more alternatives. To return the result, the CASE expression uses a selector, which is an expression whose value is used to return one of several alternatives. The selector is followed by one or more WHEN clauses that are checked sequentially. The value of the selector determines which result is returned. If the value of the selector equals the value of a WHEN clause expression, that WHEN clause is executed and that result is returned.

PL/SQL also provides a searched CASE expression, which has the form:

```
CASE
  WHEN search_condition1 THEN result1
  WHEN search_condition2 THEN result2
  ...
  WHEN search_conditionN THEN resultN
  [ELSE resultN+1]
END;
```

A searched CASE expression has no selector. Furthermore, the WHEN clauses in CASE expressions contain search conditions that yield a Boolean value rather than expressions that can yield a value of any type.
CASE Expressions: Example

In the example in the slide, the `CASE` expression uses the value in the `v_grade` variable as the expression. This value is accepted from the user by using a substitution variable. Based on the value entered by the user, the `CASE` expression returns the value of the `v_appraisal` variable based on the value of the `v_grade` value.

Result
When you enter a or A for `v_grade`, as shown in the Substitution Variable window, the output of the example is as follows:

```
CASE Expressions: Example

SET VERIFY OFF
DECLARE
  v_grade CHAR(1) := UPPER('&grade');
  v_appraisal VARCHAR2(20);
BEGIN
  v_appraisal := CASE v_grade
     WHEN 'A' THEN 'Excellent'
     WHEN 'B' THEN 'Very Good'
     WHEN 'C' THEN 'Good'
     ELSE 'No such grade'
  END;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Grade: '|| v_grade || 'Appraisal ' || v_appraisal);
END;
/
```
Searched **CASE** Expressions

In the previous example, you saw a single test expression, the `v_grade` variable. The **WHEN** clause compared a value against this test expression.

In searched **CASE** statements, you do not have a test expression. Instead, the **WHEN** clause contains an expression that results in a Boolean value. The same example is rewritten in this slide to show searched **CASE** statements.

**Result**

The output of the example is as follows when you enter `b` or `B` for `v_grade`:

```
GRADE: [Enter 'b' or 'B']
```

```
Grade: B Appraisal Good
```
CASE Statement

DECLARE
    v_deptid NUMBER;
    v_deptname VARCHAR2(20);
    v_emps NUMBER;
    v_mngid NUMBER := 108;
BEGIN
    CASE v_mngid
        WHEN 108 THEN
            SELECT department_id, department_name
            INTO v_deptid, v_deptname FROM departments
            WHERE manager_id=108;
            SELECT count(*) INTO v_emps FROM employees
            WHERE department_id=v_deptid;
        WHEN 200 THEN
            ...
    END CASE;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('You are working in the ' || v_deptname ||
        ' department. There are ' || v_emps ||
        ' employees in this department');
END;
/

CASE Statement

Recall the use of the IF statement. You may include \( n \) number of PL/SQL statements in the THEN clause and also in the ELSE clause. Similarly, you can include statements in the CASE statement, which is more readable compared to multiple IF and ELSIF statements.

How a CASE Expression Differs from a CASE Statement

A CASE expression evaluates the condition and returns a value, whereas a CASE statement evaluates the condition and performs an action. A CASE statement can be a complete PL/SQL block.

- CASE statements end with END CASE;
- CASE expressions end with END;

The output of the slide code example is as follows:

Note: Whereas an IF statement is able to do nothing (the conditions could be all false and the ELSE clause is not mandatory), a CASE statement must execute some PL/SQL statement.
Handling Nulls

When you are working with nulls, you can avoid some common mistakes by keeping in mind the following rules:

- Simple comparisons involving nulls always yield NULL.
- Applying the logical operator NOT to a null yields NULL.
- If the condition yields NULL in conditional control statements, its associated sequence of statements is not executed.

Handling Nulls

Consider the following example:

```sql
x := 5;
y := NULL;
...
IF x != y THEN -- yields NULL, not TRUE
   -- sequence_of_statements that are not executed
END IF;
```

You may expect the sequence of statements to execute because `x` and `y` seem unequal. But nulls are indeterminate. Whether or not `x` is equal to `y` is unknown. Therefore, the IF condition yields NULL and the sequence of statements is bypassed.

```sql
a := NULL;
b := NULL;
...
IF a = b THEN -- yields NULL, not TRUE
   -- sequence_of_statements that are not executed
END IF;
```

In the second example, you may expect the sequence of statements to execute because `a` and `b` seem equal. But, again, equality is unknown, so the IF condition yields NULL and the sequence of statements is bypassed.
Logic Tables

Build a simple Boolean condition with a comparison operator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AND</th>
<th>TRUE</th>
<th>FALSE</th>
<th>NULL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OR</th>
<th>TRUE</th>
<th>FALSE</th>
<th>NULL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOT</th>
<th>TRUE</th>
<th>FALSE</th>
<th>NULL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Logic Tables

You can build a simple Boolean condition by combining number, character, and date expressions with comparison operators.

You can build a complex Boolean condition by combining simple Boolean conditions with the logical operators AND, OR, and NOT. The logical operators are used to check the Boolean variable values and return TRUE, FALSE, or NULL. In the logic tables shown in the slide:

- FALSE takes precedence in an AND condition, and TRUE takes precedence in an OR condition
- AND returns TRUE only if both of its operands are TRUE
- OR returns FALSE only if both of its operands are FALSE
- NULL AND TRUE always evaluates to NULL because it is not known whether the second operand evaluates to TRUE

Note: The negation of NULL (NOT NULL) results in a null value because null values are indeterminate.
Boolean Expressions or Logical Expression?

What is the value of flag in each case?

```plaintext
flag := reorder_flag AND available_flag;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REORDER_FLAG</th>
<th>AVAILABLE_FLAG</th>
<th>FLAG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>?    (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>?    (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>?    (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
<td>?    (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Boolean Expressions or Logical Expression?

The AND logic table can help you to evaluate the possibilities for the Boolean condition in the slide.

**Answers**
1. TRUE
2. FALSE
3. NULL
4. FALSE
Agenda

- Using IF statements
- Using CASE statements and CASE expressions
- Constructing and identifying loop statements
Iterative Control: LOOP Statements

- Loops repeat a statement (or a sequence of statements) multiple times.
- There are three loop types:
  - Basic loop
  - FOR loop
  - WHILE loop

Iterative Control: LOOP Statements

PL/SQL provides several facilities to structure loops to repeat a statement or sequence of statements multiple times. Loops are mainly used to execute statements repeatedly until an exit condition is reached. It is mandatory to have an exit condition in a loop; otherwise, the loop is infinite.

Looping constructs are the third type of control structures. PL/SQL provides the following types of loops:

- Basic loop that performs repetitive actions without overall conditions
- FOR loops that perform iterative actions based on a count
- WHILE loops that perform iterative actions based on a condition

Note: An EXIT statement can be used to terminate loops. A basic loop must have an EXIT. The cursor FOR loop (which is another type of FOR loop) is discussed in the lesson titled “Using Explicit Cursors.”
Basic Loops

Syntax:

```
LOOP
    statement1;
    . . .
    EXIT [WHEN condition];
END LOOP;
```

Basic Loops

The simplest form of a LOOP statement is the basic loop, which encloses a sequence of statements between the LOOP and END LOOP keywords. Each time the flow of execution reaches the END LOOP statement, control is returned to the corresponding LOOP statement above it. A basic loop allows execution of its statements at least once, even if the EXIT condition is already met upon entering the loop. Without the EXIT statement, the loop would be infinite.

EXIT Statement

You can use the EXIT statement to terminate a loop. Control passes to the next statement after the END LOOP statement. You can issue EXIT either as an action within an IF statement or as a stand-alone statement within the loop. The EXIT statement must be placed inside a loop. In the latter case, you can attach a WHEN clause to enable conditional termination of the loop. When the EXIT statement is encountered, the condition in the WHEN clause is evaluated. If the condition yields TRUE, the loop ends and control passes to the next statement after the loop. A basic loop can contain multiple EXIT statements, but it is recommended that you have only one EXIT point.
Basic Loop: Example

The basic loop example shown in the slide is defined as follows: “Insert three new location IDs for the CA country code and the city of Montreal.”

**Note**
- A basic loop allows execution of its statements until the EXIT WHEN condition is met.
- If the condition is placed in the loop such that it is not checked until after the loop statements execute, the loop executes at least once.
- However, if the exit condition is placed at the top of the loop (before any of the other executable statements) and if that condition is true, the loop exits and the statements never execute.

**Results**
To view the output, run the code example: code_05_22_s.sql.
WHILE Loops

Syntax:

```
WHILE condition LOOP
    statement1;
    statement2;
    . . .
END LOOP;
```

Use the WHILE loop to repeat statements while a condition is TRUE.

WHILE Loops

You can use the WHILE loop to repeat a sequence of statements until the controlling condition is no longer TRUE. The condition is evaluated at the start of each iteration. The loop terminates when the condition is FALSE or NULL. If the condition is FALSE or NULL at the start of the loop, no further iterations are performed. Thus, it is possible that none of the statements inside the loop are executed.

In the syntax:

- `condition` Is a Boolean variable or expression (TRUE, FALSE, or NULL)
- `statement` Can be one or more PL/SQL or SQL statements

If the variables involved in the conditions do not change during the body of the loop, the condition remains TRUE and the loop does not terminate.

**Note:** If the condition yields NULL, the loop is bypassed and control passes to the next statement.
WHILE Loops: Example

In the example in the slide, three new location IDs for the CA country code and the city of Montreal are added.

• With each iteration through the WHILE loop, a counter (v_counter) is incremented.
• If the number of iterations is less than or equal to the number 3, the code within the loop is executed and a row is inserted into the locations table.
• After v_counter exceeds the number of new locations for this city and country, the condition that controls the loop evaluates to FALSE and the loop terminates.

Results

To view the output, run the code example: code_05_24_s.sql.
**FOR Loops**

- Use a `FOR` loop to shortcut the test for the number of iterations.
- Do not declare the counter; it is declared implicitly.

```sql
FOR counter IN [REVERSE] lower_bound..upper_bound LOOP
  statement1;
  statement2;
  . . .
END LOOP;
```

**FOR Loops**

`FOR` loops have the same general structure as the basic loop. In addition, they have a control statement before the `LOOP` keyword to set the number of iterations that the PL/SQL performs.

In the syntax:

- `counter` is an implicitly declared integer whose value automatically increases or decreases (decreases if the `REVERSE` keyword is used) by 1 on each iteration of the loop until the upper or lower bound is reached.
- `REVERSE` causes the counter to decrement with each iteration from the upper bound to the lower bound.
- `lower_bound` specifies the lower bound for the range of counter values.
- `upper_bound` specifies the upper bound for the range of counter values.

**Note:** The lower bound is still referenced first.

Do not declare the counter. It is declared implicitly as an integer.
FOR Loops (continued)

Note: The sequence of statements is executed each time the counter is incremented, as determined by the two bounds. The lower bound and upper bound of the loop range can be literals, variables, or expressions, but they must evaluate to integers. The bounds are rounded to integers; that is, 11/3 and 8/5 are valid upper or lower bounds. The lower bound and upper bound are inclusive in the loop range. If the lower bound of the loop range evaluates to a larger integer than the upper bound, the sequence of statements is not executed.

For example, the following statement is executed only once:

```
FOR i IN 3..3
 LOOP
   statement1;
END LOOP;
```
FOR Loops: Example

DECLARE
    v_countryid   locations.country_id%TYPE := 'CA';
    v_loc_id      locations.location_id%TYPE ;
    v_new_city    locations.city%TYPE := 'Montreal';
BEGIN
    SELECT MAX(location_id) INTO v_loc_id
    FROM locations
    WHERE country_id = v_countryid;
    FOR i IN 1..3 LOOP
        INSERT INTO locations(location_id, city, country_id)
        VALUES((v_loc_id + i), v_new_city, v_countryid);
    END LOOP;
END;
/

FOR Loops: Example

You have already learned how to insert three new locations for the CA country code and the city of Montreal by using the basic loop and the WHILE loop. The example in this slide shows how to achieve the same by using the FOR loop.

Results

To view the output, run the code example code_05_27_s.sql.
FOR Loop Rules

- Reference the counter only within the loop; it is undefined outside the loop.
- Do not reference the counter as the target of an assignment.
- Neither loop bound should be NULL.

The slide lists the guidelines to follow when writing a FOR loop.

Note: The lower and upper bounds of a LOOP statement do not need to be numeric literals. They can be expressions that convert to numeric values.

Example:

```sql
DECLARE
  v_lower  NUMBER := 1;
  v_upper  NUMBER := 100;
BEGIN
  FOR i IN v_lower..v_upper LOOP
    ... 
  END LOOP;
END;
/```
Suggested Use of Loops

- Use the basic loop when the statements inside the loop must execute at least once.
- Use the **WHILE** loop if the condition must be evaluated at the start of each iteration.
- Use a **FOR** loop if the number of iterations is known.

Suggested Use of Loops

A basic loop allows the execution of its statement at least once, even if the condition is already met upon entering the loop. Without the **EXIT** statement, the loop would be infinite.

You can use the **WHILE** loop to repeat a sequence of statements until the controlling condition is no longer **TRUE**. The condition is evaluated at the start of each iteration. The loop terminates when the condition is **FALSE**. If the condition is **FALSE** at the start of the loop, no further iterations are performed.

**FOR** loops have a control statement before the **LOOP** keyword to determine the number of iterations that the PL/SQL performs. Use a **FOR** loop if the number of iterations is predetermined.
Nested Loops and Labels

- You can nest loops to multiple levels.
- Use labels to distinguish between blocks and loops.
- Exit the outer loop with the `EXIT` statement that references the label.

You can nest the `FOR`, `WHILE`, and basic loops within one another. The termination of a nested loop does not terminate the enclosing loop unless an exception is raised. However, you can label loops and exit the outer loop with the `EXIT` statement.

Label names follow the same rules as the other identifiers. A label is placed before a statement, either on the same line or on a separate line. White space is insignificant in all PL/SQL parsing except inside literals. Label basic loops by placing the label before the word `LOOP` within label delimiters (`<<label>>`). In `FOR` and `WHILE` loops, place the label before `FOR` or `WHILE`.

If the loop is labeled, the label name can be included (optionally) after the `END LOOP` statement for clarity.
Nested Loops and Labels: Example

In the example in the slide, there are two loops. The outer loop is identified by the label "<<Outer_Loop>>" and the inner loop is identified by the label "<<Inner_Loop>>". The identifiers are placed before the word LOOP within label delimiters ("<<label>>"). The inner loop is nested within the outer loop. The label names are included after the END LOOP statements for clarity.
PL/SQL CONTINUE Statement

• Definition
  – Adds the functionality to begin the next loop iteration
  – Provides programmers with the ability to transfer control to the next iteration of a loop
  – Uses parallel structure and semantics to the EXIT statement

• Benefits
  – Eases the programming process
  – May provide a small performance improvement over the previous programming workarounds to simulate the CONTINUE statement

PL/SQL CONTINUE Statement

The CONTINUE statement enables you to transfer control within a loop back to a new iteration or to leave the loop. Many other programming languages have this functionality. With the Oracle Database 11g release, PL/SQL also offers this functionality. Before the Oracle Database 11g release, you could code a workaround by using Boolean variables and conditional statements to simulate the CONTINUE programmatic functionality. In some cases, the workarounds are less efficient.

The CONTINUE statement offers you a simplified means to control loop iterations. It may be more efficient than the previous coding workarounds.

The CONTINUE statement is commonly used to filter data within a loop body before the main processing begins.
PL/SQL CONTINUE Statement: Example 1

In the example, there are two assignments using the v_total variable:
1. The first assignment is executed for each of the 10 iterations of the loop.
2. The second assignment is executed for the first five iterations of the loop. The CONTINUE statement transfers control within a loop back to a new iteration, so for the last five iterations of the loop, the second TOTAL assignment is not executed.

The end result of the TOTAL variable is 70.
PL/SQL CONTINUE Statement: Example 2

You can use the CONTINUE statement to jump to the next iteration of an outer loop. To do this, provide the outer loop a label to identify where the CONTINUE statement should go.

The CONTINUE statement in the innermost loop terminates that loop whenever the WHEN condition is true (just like the EXIT keyword). After the innermost loop is terminated by the CONTINUE statement, control transfers to the next iteration of the outermost loop labeled BeforeTopLoop in this example.

When this pair of loops completes, the value of the TOTAL variable is 20.

You can also use the CONTINUE statement within an inner block of code, which does not contain a loop as long as the block is nested inside an appropriate outer loop.

Restrictions
- The CONTINUE statement cannot appear outside a loop at all—this generates a compiler error.
- You cannot use the CONTINUE statement to pass through a procedure, function, or method boundary—this generates a compiler error.
Quiz

There are three types of loops: basic, **FOR**, and **WHILE**.

1. True
2. False

**Answer: 1**

**Loop Types**

PL/SQL provides the following types of loops:

- Basic loops that perform repetitive actions without overall conditions
- **FOR** loops that perform iterative actions based on a count
- **WHILE** loops that perform iterative actions based on a condition
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned to change the logical flow of statements by using the following control structures:

- Conditional (IF statement)
- CASE expressions and CASE statements
- Loops:
  - Basic loop
  - FOR loop
  - WHILE loop
- EXIT statement
- CONTINUE statement

Summary

A language can be called a programming language only if it provides control structures for the implementation of business logic. These control structures are also used to control the flow of the program. PL/SQL is a programming language that integrates programming constructs with SQL.

A conditional control construct checks for the validity of a condition and performs an action accordingly. You use the IF construct to perform a conditional execution of statements.

An iterative control construct executes a sequence of statements repeatedly, as long as a specified condition holds TRUE. You use the various loop constructs to perform iterative operations.
Practice 5: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:
- Performing conditional actions by using IF statements
- Performing iterative steps by using LOOP structures

In this practice, you create the PL/SQL blocks that incorporate loops and conditional control structures. The exercises test your understanding of writing various IF statements and LOOP constructs.
6

Working with Composite Data Types
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Describe PL/SQL collections and records
• Create user-defined PL/SQL records
• Create a PL/SQL record with the %ROWTYPE attribute
• Create associative arrays
  – INDEX BY table
  – INDEX BY table of records

Objectives

You have already been introduced to composite data types. In this lesson, you learn more about composite data types and their uses.
Agenda

- Introducing composite data types
- Using PL/SQL records
  - Manipulating data with PL/SQL records
  - Advantages of the \%ROWTYPE attribute
- Using PL/SQL collections
  - Examining associative arrays
  - Introducing nested tables
  - Introducing VARRAY
Composite Data Types

- Can hold multiple values (unlike scalar types)
- Are of two types:
  - PL/SQL records
  - PL/SQL collections
    - Associative array (INDEX BY table)
    - Nested table
    - VARRAY

Why Use Composite Data Types?
You have all the related data as a single unit. You can easily access and modify data. Data is easier to manage, relate, and transport if it is composite. An analogy is having a single bag for all your laptop components rather than a separate bag for each component.
PL/SQL Records or Collections?

- Use PL/SQL records when you want to store values of different data types but only one occurrence at a time.
- Use PL/SQL collections when you want to store values of the same data type.

**PL/SQL Record:**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE</td>
<td>23-DEC-98</td>
<td>ATLANTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PL/SQL Collection:**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SMITH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>JONES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>BENNETT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>KRAMER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PL/SQL Records or Collections?**

If both PL/SQL records and PL/SQL collections are composite types, how do you choose which one to use?

- Use PL/SQL records when you want to store values of different data types that are logically related. For example, you can create a PL/SQL record to hold employee details and indicate that all the values stored are related because they provide information about a particular employee.
- Use PL/SQL collections when you want to store values of the same data type. Note that this data type can also be of the composite type (such as records). You can define a collection to hold the first names of all employees. You may have stored \( n \) names in the collection; however, name 1 is not related to name 2. The relation between these names is only that they are employee names. These collections are similar to arrays in programming languages such as C, C++, and Java.
Agenda

• Examining composite data types
• Using PL/SQL records
  – Manipulating data with PL/SQL records
  – Advantages of the %ROWTYPE attribute
• Using PL/SQL collections
  – Examining associative arrays
  – Introducing nested tables
  – Introducing VARRAY
PL/SQL Records

- Must contain one or more components (called fields) of any scalar, RECORD, or INDEX BY table data type
- Are similar to structures in most third-generation languages (including C and C++)
- Are user-defined and can be a subset of a row in a table
- Treat a collection of fields as a logical unit
- Are convenient for fetching a row of data from a table for processing

PL/SQL Records

A record is a group of related data items stored in fields, each with its own name and data type.
- Each record defined can have as many fields as necessary.
- Records can be assigned initial values and can be defined as NOT NULL.
- Fields without initial values are initialized to NULL.
- The DEFAULT keyword as well as := can be used in initializing fields.
- You can define RECORD types and declare user-defined records in the declarative part of any block, subprogram, or package.
- You can declare and reference nested records. One record can be the component of another record.
Creating a PL/SQL Record

Syntax:

```
1. TYPE type_name IS RECORD
   (field_declaration[, field_declaration]...);

2. identifier type_name;

field_declaration:

field_name {field_type | variable%TYPE
| table.column%TYPE | table%ROWTYPE}
[[NOT NULL] {:= | DEFAULT} expr]
```

Creating a PL/SQL Record

PL/SQL records are user-defined composite types. To use them, perform the following steps:

1. Define the record in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block. The syntax for defining
   the record is shown in the slide.
2. Declare (and optionally initialize) the internal components of this record type.

In the syntax:

- `type_name` is the name of the RECORD type (This identifier is used to declare
  records.)
- `field_name` is the name of a field within the record
- `field_type` is the data type of the field (It represents any PL/SQL data type except
  REF CURSOR. You can use the %TYPE and %ROWTYPE attributes.)
- `expr` is the `field_type` or an initial value

The NOT NULL constraint prevents assigning of nulls to the specified fields. Be sure to
initialize the NOT NULL fields.
PL/SQL Record Structure

Field declarations:

Field1 (data type)  Field2 (data type)  Field3 (data type)

Example:

Field1 (data type)  Field2 (data type)  Field3 (data type)
employee_id number(6)  last_name varchar2(25)  job_id varchar2(10)

Field2 (data type)  Field3 (data type)Field1 (data type)
100  King  AD_PRES

PL/SQL Record Structure

Fields in a record are accessed with the name of the record. To reference or initialize an individual field, use the dot notation:

`record_name.field_name`

For example, you reference the `job_id` field in the `emp_record` record as follows:

`emp_record.job_id`

You can then assign a value to the record field:

`emp_record.job_id := 'ST_CLERK';`

In a block or subprogram, user-defined records are instantiated when you enter the block or subprogram. They cease to exist when you exit the block or subprogram.
%ROWTYPE Attribute

- Declare a variable according to a collection of columns in a database table or view.
- Prefix %ROWTYPE with the database table or view.
- Fields in the record take their names and data types from the columns of the table or view.

Syntax:

```
DECLARE
    identifier reference%ROWTYPE;
```

%ROWTYPE Attribute

You learned that %TYPE is used to declare a variable of the column type. The variable has the same data type and size as the table column. The benefit of %TYPE is that you do not have to change the variable if the column is altered. Also, if the variable is a number and is used in any calculations, you need not worry about its precision.

The %ROWTYPE attribute is used to declare a record that can hold an entire row of a table or view. The fields in the record take their names and data types from the columns of the table or view. The record can also store an entire row of data fetched from a cursor or cursor variable.

The slide shows the syntax for declaring a record. In the syntax:

- `identifier` is the name chosen for the record as a whole
- `reference` is the name of the table, view, cursor, or cursor variable on which the record is to be based (The table or view must exist for this reference to be valid.)

In the following example, a record is declared using %ROWTYPE as a data type specifier:

```
DECLARE
    emp_record employees%ROWTYPE;
    ...
```
%ROWTYPE Attribute (continued)

The `emp_record` record has a structure consisting of the following fields, each representing a column in the `employees` table.

**Note:** This is not code, but simply the structure of the composite variable.

```plsql
(employee_id       NUMBER(6),
first_name        VARCHAR2(20),
last_name         VARCHAR2(20),
email             VARCHAR2(20),
phone_number      VARCHAR2(20),
hire_date         DATE,
salary            NUMBER(8,2),
commission_pct    NUMBER(2,2),
manager_id        NUMBER(6),
department_id     NUMBER(4))
```

To reference an individual field, use the dot notation:

```
record_name.field_name
```

For example, you reference the `commission_pct` field in the `emp_record` record as follows:

```
emp_record.commission_pct
```

You can then assign a value to the record field:

```
emp_record.commission_pct := .35;
```

**Assigning Values to Records**

You can assign a list of common values to a record by using the `SELECT` or `FETCH` statement. Make sure that the column names appear in the same order as the fields in your record. You can also assign one record to another if both have the same corresponding data types. A record of type `employees%ROWTYPE` and a user-defined record type having analogous fields of the `employees` table will have the same data type. Therefore, if a user-defined record contains fields similar to the fields of a `%ROWTYPE` record, you can assign that user-defined record to the `%ROWTYPE` record.
Creating a PL/SQL Record: Example

The field declarations used in defining a record are like variable declarations. Each field has a unique name and a specific data type. There are no predefined data types for PL/SQL records, as there are for scalar variables. Therefore, you must create the record type first, and then declare an identifier using that type.

In the example in the slide, a PL/SQL record is created using the required two-step process:
1. A record type (t_rec) is defined
2. A record (v_myrec) of the t_rec type is declared

Note
- The record contains four fields: v_sal, v_minsal, v_hire_date, and v_recl.
- v_recl is defined using the %ROWTYPE attribute, which is similar to the %TYPE attribute. With %TYPE, a field inherits the data type of a specified column. With %ROWTYPE, a field inherits the column names and data types of all columns in the referenced table.
- PL/SQL record fields are referenced using the <record>.<field> notation, or the <record>.<field>.<column> notation for fields that are defined with the %ROWTYPE attribute.
- You can add the NOT NULL constraint to any field declaration to prevent assigning nulls to that field. Remember that fields that are declared as NOT NULL must be initialized.
Advantages of Using the %ROWTYPE Attribute

- The number and data types of the underlying database columns need not be known—and, in fact, might change at run time.
- The %ROWTYPE attribute is useful when you want to retrieve a row with:
  - The SELECT * statement
  - Row-level INSERT and UPDATE statements

Advantages of Using %ROWTYPE

The advantages of using the %ROWTYPE attribute are listed in the slide. Use the %ROWTYPE attribute when you are not sure about the structure of the underlying database table.

The main advantage of using %ROWTYPE is that it simplifies maintenance. Using %ROWTYPE ensures that the data types of the variables declared with this attribute change dynamically when the underlying table is altered. If a DDL statement changes the columns in a table, the PL/SQL program unit is invalidated. When the program is recompiled, it automatically reflects the new table format.

The %ROWTYPE attribute is particularly useful when you want to retrieve an entire row from a table. In the absence of this attribute, you would be forced to declare a variable for each of the columns retrieved by the SELECT statement.
Another %ROWTYPE Attribute Example

Another example of the %ROWTYPE attribute is shown in the slide. If an employee is retiring, information about that employee is added to a table that holds information about retired employees. The user supplies the employee number. The record of the employee specified by the user is retrieved from the employees table and stored in the emp_rec variable, which is declared using the %ROWTYPE attribute.

The CREATE statement that creates the retired_emps table is:

```
CREATE TABLE retired_emps
  (EMPNO      NUMBER(4), ENAME      VARCHAR2(10),
   JOB        VARCHAR2(9),  MGR        NUMBER(4),
   HIREDATE   DATE,  LEAVEDATE  DATE,
   SAL        NUMBER(7,2), COMM       NUMBER(7,2),
   DEPTNO     NUMBER(2))
```

Note
- The record that is inserted into the retired_emps table is shown in the slide.
- To see the output shown in the slide, place your cursor on the SELECT statement at the bottom of the code example in SQL Developer and press F9.
- The complete code example is found in code_6_14_n-s.sql.
Inserting a Record by Using `%ROWTYPE`

```
...  
DECLARE  
v_employee_number number := 124;  
v_emp_rec retired_emps%ROWTYPE;  
BEGIN  
SELECT employee_id, last_name, job_id, manager_id,  
hire_date, hire_date, salary, commission_pct,  
department_id INTO v_emp_rec FROM employees  
WHERE employee_id = v_employee_number;  
INSERT INTO retired_emps VALUES v_emp_rec;  
END;  
/

SELECT * FROM retired_emps;
```

**Inserting a Record by Using `%ROWTYPE`**

Compare the `INSERT` statement in the previous slide with the `INSERT` statement in this slide. The `emp_rec` record is of type `retired_emps`. The number of fields in the record must be equal to the number of field names in the `INTO` clause. You can use this record to insert values into a table. This makes the code more readable.

Examine the `SELECT` statement in the slide. You select `hire_date` twice and insert the `hire_date` value in the `leavedate` field of `retired_emps`. No employee retires on the hire date. The inserted record is shown in the slide. (You will see how to update this in the next slide.)

**Note:** To see the output shown in the slide, place your cursor on the `SELECT` statement at the bottom of the code example in SQL Developer and press F9.
Updating a Row in a Table by Using a Record

```
SET VERIFY OFF
DECLARE
    v_employee_number number:= 124;
    v_emp_rec retired_emps%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO v_emp_rec FROM retired_emps;
    v_emp_rec.leavedate:=CURRENT_DATE;
    UPDATE retired_emps SET ROW = v_emp_rec WHERE empno=v_employee_number;
END;
/
SELECT * FROM retired_emps;
```

You learned to insert a row by using a record. This slide shows you how to update a row by using a record.

- The **ROW** keyword is used to represent the entire row.
- The code shown in the slide updates the **leavedate** of the employee.
- The record is updated as shown in the slide.

**Note:** To see the output shown in the slide, place your cursor on the `SELECT` statement at the bottom of the code example in SQL Developer and press F9.
Agenda

- Examining composite data types
- Using PL/SQL records
  - Manipulating data with PL/SQL records
  - Advantages of the %ROWTYPE attribute
- Using PL/SQL collections
  - Examining associative arrays
  - Introducing nested tables
  - Introducing VARRAY

Agenda

As stated previously, PL/SQL collections are used when you want to store values of the same data type. This data type can also be of the composite type (such as records). Therefore, collections are used to treat data as a single unit. Collections are of three types:
- Associative array
- Nested table
- VARRAY

**Note:** Of these three collections, the associative array is the focus of this lesson. The Nested table and VARRAY are introduced only for comparative purposes. These two collections are covered in detail in the course *Oracle Database 11g: Advanced PL/SQL.*
**Associative Arrays (INDEX BY Tables)**

An associative array is a PL/SQL collection with two columns:
- Primary key of integer or string data type
- Column of scalar or record data type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>JONES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>HARDEY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>MADURO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>KRAMER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Associative Arrays (INDEX BY Tables)**

An associative array is a type of PL/SQL collection. It is a composite data type, and is user defined. Associative arrays are sets of key-value pairs. They can store data using a primary key value as the index, where the key values are not necessarily sequential. Associative arrays are also known as **INDEX BY** tables.

Associative arrays have only two columns, neither of which can be named:
- The first column, of integer or string type, acts as the primary key.
- The second column, of scalar or record data type, holds values.
Associative Array Structure

As previously mentioned, associative arrays have two columns. The second column either holds one value per row, or multiple values.

**Unique Key Column:** The data type of the key column can be:
- Numeric, either BINARY_INTEGER or PLS_INTEGER. These two numeric data types require less storage than NUMBER, and arithmetic operations on these data types are faster than the NUMBER arithmetic.
- VARCHAR2 or one of its subtypes

**“Value” Column:** The value column can be either a scalar data type or a record data type. A column with scalar data type can hold only one value per row, whereas a column with record data type can hold multiple values per row.

**Other Characteristics**
- An associative array is not populated at the time of declaration. It contains no keys or values, and you cannot initialize an associative array in its declaration.
- An explicit executable statement is required to populate the associative array.
- Like the size of a database table, the size of an associative array is unconstrained. That is, the number of rows can increase dynamically so that your associative array grows as new rows are added. Note that the keys do not have to be sequential, and can be both positive and negative.
Steps to Create an Associative Array

Syntax:

```plsql
TYPE type_name IS TABLE OF
  {column_type | variable%TYPE
  | table.column%TYPE} [NOT NULL]
  | table%ROWTYPE
  | INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER | BINARY_INTEGER
  | VARCHAR2(<size>);

identifier type_name;
```

Example:

```plsql
... TYPE ename_table_type IS TABLE OF
  employees.last_name%TYPE
INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
...
ename_table [ename_table_type];
```

Steps to Create an Associative Array

There are two steps involved in creating an associative array:
1. Declare a TABLE data type using the INDEX BY option.
2. Declare a variable of that data type.

Syntax

- **type_name**
  - Is the name of the TABLE type (This name is used in the subsequent declaration of the array identifier.)

- **column_type**
  - Is any scalar or composite data type such as VARCHAR2, DATE, NUMBER, or %TYPE (You can use the %TYPE attribute to provide the column data type.)

- **identifier**
  - Is the name of the identifier that represents an entire associative array

Note: The NOT NULL constraint prevents nulls from being assigned to the associative array.

Example

In the example, an associative array with the variable name ename_table is declared to store the last names of employees.
Creating and Accessing Associative Arrays

The example in the slide creates two associative arrays, with the identifiers `ename_table` and `hiredate_table`.

The key of each associative array is used to access an element in the array, by using the following syntax:

```
identifier(index)
```

In both arrays, the index value belongs to the `PLS_INTEGER` type.

- To reference the first row in the `ename_table` associative array, specify:
  `ename_table(1)`
- To reference the eighth row in the `hiredate_table` associative array, specify:
  `hiredate_table(8)`

**Note**

- The magnitude range of a `PLS_INTEGER` is –2,147,483,647 through 2,147,483,647, so the primary key value can be negative. Indexing does not need to start with 1.
- The `exists(i)` method returns `TRUE` if a row with index `i` is returned. Use the `exists` method to prevent an error that is raised in reference to a nonexistent table element.
- The complete code example is found in `code_6_21_s.sql`.

---

Oracle Database 11g: PL/SQL Fundamentals 6 - 21
Using INDEX BY Table Methods

The following methods make associative arrays easier to use:

- EXISTS
- COUNT
- FIRST
- LAST
- PRIOR
- NEXT
- DELETE

Using INDEX BY Table Methods

An INDEX BY table method is a built-in procedure or function that operates on an associative array and is called by using the dot notation.

**Syntax:** \textit{table\_name.method\_name[ (parameters) ]}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXISTS((n))</td>
<td>Returns TRUE if the (n)th element in an associative array exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUNT</td>
<td>Returns the number of elements that an associative array currently contains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIRST</td>
<td>- Returns the first (smallest) index number in an associative array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Returns NULL if the associative array is empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST</td>
<td>- Returns the last (largest) index number in an associative array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Returns NULL if the associative array is empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIOR((n))</td>
<td>Returns the index number that precedes index (n) in an associative array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT((n))</td>
<td>Returns the index number that succeeds index (n) in an associative array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>- DELETE removes all elements from an associative array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DELETE ((n)) removes the (n)th element from an associative array.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DELETE ((m, n)) removes all elements in the range (m \ldots n) from an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>associative array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX BY Table of Records Option

Define an associative array to hold an entire row from a table.

```sql
DECLARE
    TYPE dept_table_type IS TABLE OF departments%ROWTYPE INDEX PLS_INTEGER;
    dept_table dept_table_type;
    -- Each element of dept_table is a record
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO dept_table(1) FROM departments
    WHERE department_id = 10;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(dept_table(1).department_id || ||
                         dept_table(1).department_name || ||
                         dept_table(1).manager_id);
END;
/
```

INDEX BY Table of Records Option

As previously discussed, an associative array that is declared as a table of scalar data type can store the details of only one column in a database table. However, there is often a need to store all the columns retrieved by a query. The INDEX BY table of records option enables one array definition to hold information about all the fields of a database table.

Creating and Referencing a Table of Records

As shown in the associative array example in the slide, you can:

- Use the `%ROWTYPE` attribute to declare a record that represents a row in a database table
- Refer to fields within the `dept_table` array because each element of the array is a record

The differences between the `%ROWTYPE` attribute and the composite data type PL/SQL record are as follows:

- PL/SQL record types can be user-defined, whereas `%ROWTYPE` implicitly defines the record.
- PL/SQL records enable you to specify the fields and their data types while declaring them. When you use `%ROWTYPE`, you cannot specify the fields. The `%ROWTYPE` attribute represents a table row with all the fields based on the definition of that table.
- User-defined records are static, but `%ROWTYPE` records are dynamic—they are based on a table structure. If the table structure changes, the record structure also picks up the change.
INDEX BY Table of Records Option: Example 2

The example in the slide declares an associative array, using the INDEX BY table of records option, to temporarily store the details of employees whose employee IDs are between 100 and 104. The variable name for the array is `emp_table_type`.

Using a loop, the information of the employees from the `EMPLOYEES` table is retrieved and stored in the array. Another loop is used to print the last names from the array. Note the use of the `first` and `last` methods in the example.

**Note:** The slide demonstrates one way to work with an associative array that uses the INDEX BY table of records method. However, you can do the same more efficiently using cursors. Cursors are explained in the lesson titled “Using Explicit Cursors.”

The results of the code example is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
King
Kochhar
De Haan
Hunold
Ernst
```
Nested Tables

The functionality of nested tables is similar to that of associative arrays; however, there are differences in the nested table implementation.

- The nested table is a valid data type in a schema-level table, but an associative array is not. Therefore, unlike associative arrays, nested tables can be stored in the database.
- The size of a nested table can increase dynamically, although the maximum size is 2 GB.
- The “key” cannot be a negative value (unlike in the associative array). Though reference is made to the first column as key, there is no key in a nested table. There is a column with numbers.
- Elements can be deleted from anywhere in a nested table, leaving a sparse table with nonsequential “keys.” The rows of a nested table are not in any particular order.
- When you retrieve values from a nested table, the rows are given consecutive subscripts starting from 1.

Syntax

```
TYPE type_name IS TABLE OF
  {column_type | variable%TYPE
  | table.column%TYPE} [NOT NULL]
  | table.%ROWTYPE
```
Nested Tables (continued)

Example:

```plsql
TYPE location_type IS TABLE OF locations.city%TYPE;
offices location_type;

If you do not initialize a nested table, it is automatically initialized to NULL. You can initialize
the offices nested table by using a constructor:

offices := location_type('Bombay', 'Tokyo', 'Singapore', 'Oxford');

The complete code example and output is as follows:

SET SERVEROUTPUT ON;

DECLARE
    TYPE location_type IS TABLE OF locations.city%TYPE;
    offices location_type;
    table_count NUMBER;
BEGIN
    offices := location_type('Bombay', 'Tokyo', 'Singapore', 'Oxford');
    FOR i in 1..offices.count() LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(offices(i));
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

Results: [Anonymous Block Completed]

Bombay
Tokyo
Singapore
Oxford
VARRAY

A variable-size array (VARRAY) is similar to an associative array, except that a VARRAY is constrained in size.

- A VARRAY is valid in a schema-level table.
- Items of VARRAY type are called VARRAYs.
- VARRAYs have a fixed upper bound. You have to specify the upper bound when you declare them. This is similar to arrays in C language. The maximum size of a VARRAY is 2 GB, as in nested tables.
- The distinction between a nested table and a VARRAY is the physical storage mode. The elements of a VARRAY are stored inline with the table’s data unless the size of the VARRAY is greater than 4 KB. Contrast that with nested tables, which are always stored out-of-line.
- You can create a VARRAY type in the database by using SQL.

Example:

```
TYPE location_type IS VARRAY(3) OF locations.city%TYPE;
offices location_type;
```

The size of this VARRAY is restricted to 3. You can initialize a VARRAY by using constructors. If you try to initialize the VARRAY with more than three elements, a “Subscript outside of limit” error message is displayed.
Summary of Collection Types

Associative Arrays

Associative arrays are sets of key-value pairs, where each key is unique and is used to locate a corresponding value in the array. The key can be either integer- or character-based. The array value may be of the scalar data type (single value) or the record data type (multiple values).

Because associative arrays are intended for storing temporary data, you cannot use them with SQL statements such as INSERT and SELECT INTO.

Nested Tables

A nested table holds a set of values. In other words, it is a table within a table. Nested tables are unbounded; that is, the size of the table can increase dynamically. Nested tables are available in both PL/SQL and the database. Within PL/SQL, nested tables are like one-dimensional arrays whose size can increase dynamically.

Varrays

Variable-size arrays, or varrays, are also collections of homogeneous elements that hold a fixed number of elements (although you can change the number of elements at run time). They use sequential numbers as subscripts. You can define equivalent SQL types, thereby allowing varrays to be stored in database tables.
Answer: 1, 2

**Advantages of Using the %ROWTYPE Attribute**

Use the %ROWTYPE attribute when you are not sure about the structure of the underlying database table.

The main advantage of using %ROWTYPE is that it simplifies maintenance. Using %ROWTYPE ensures that the data types of the variables declared with this attribute change dynamically when the underlying table is altered. If a DDL statement changes the columns in a table, the PL/SQL program unit is invalidated. When the program is recompiled, it automatically reflects the new table format.

The %ROWTYPE attribute is particularly useful when you want to retrieve an entire row from a table. In the absence of this attribute, you would be forced to declare a variable for each of the columns retrieved by the SELECT statement.
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned to:

• Define and reference PL/SQL variables of composite data types
  – PL/SQL record
  – Associative array
    – INDEX BY table
    – INDEX BY table of records
• Define a PL/SQL record by using the %ROWTYPE attribute
• Compare and contrast the three PL/SQL collection types:
  – Associative array
  – Nested table
  – VARRAY

Summary

A PL/SQL record is a collection of individual fields that represent a row in a table. By using records, you can group the data into one structure, and then manipulate this structure as one entity or logical unit. This helps reduce coding and keeps the code easy to maintain and understand.

Like PL/SQL records, a PL/SQL collection is another composite data type. PL/SQL collections include:

• Associative arrays (also known as INDEX BY tables). They are objects of TABLE type and look similar to database tables, but with a slight difference. The so-called INDEX BY tables use a primary key to give you array-like access to rows. The size of an associative array is unconstrained.
• Nested tables. The key for nested tables cannot have a negative value, unlike INDEX BY tables. The key must also be in a sequence.
• Variable-size arrays (VARRAY). A VARRAY is similar to associative arrays, except that a VARRAY is constrained in size.
Practice 6: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:
- Declaring associative arrays
- Processing data by using associative arrays
- Declaring a PL/SQL record
- Processing data by using a PL/SQL record

Practice 6: Overview

In this practice, you define, create, and use associative arrays and PL/SQL records.
Using Explicit Cursors
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Distinguish between implicit and explicit cursors
• Discuss the reasons for using explicit cursors
• Declare and control explicit cursors
• Use simple loops and cursor FOR loops to fetch data
• Declare and use cursors with parameters
• Lock rows with the FOR UPDATE clause
• Reference the current row with the WHERE CURRENT OF clause

Objectives

You have learned about implicit cursors that are automatically created by PL/SQL when you execute a SQL SELECT or DML statement. In this lesson, you learn about explicit cursors. You learn to differentiate between implicit and explicit cursors. You also learn to declare and control simple cursors, as well as cursors with parameters.
Agenda

- What are explicit cursors?
  - Using explicit cursors
  - Using cursors with parameters
  - Locking rows and referencing the current row
Cursors

Every SQL statement that is executed by the Oracle Server has an associated individual cursor:

- Implicit cursors: declared and managed by PL/SQL for all DML and PL/SQL SELECT statements
- Explicit cursors: declared and managed by the programmer

Cursors

The Oracle Server uses work areas (called private SQL areas) to execute SQL statements and to store processing information. You can use explicit cursors to name a private SQL area and to access its stored information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cursor Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Implicit</td>
<td>Implicit cursors are declared by PL/SQL implicitly for all DML and PL/SQL SELECT statements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explicit</td>
<td>For queries that return multiple rows, explicit cursors are declared and managed by the programmer, and manipulated through specific statements in the block’s executable actions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Oracle Server implicitly opens a cursor to process each SQL statement that is not associated with an explicitly declared cursor. Using PL/SQL, you can refer to the most recent implicit cursor as the SQL cursor.
Explicit Cursor Operations

You declare explicit cursors in PL/SQL when you have a `SELECT` statement that returns multiple rows. You can process each row returned by the `SELECT` statement.

The set of rows returned by a multiple-row query is called the *active set*. Its size is the number of rows that meet your search criteria. The diagram in the slide shows how an explicit cursor “points” to the current row in the active set. This enables your program to process the rows one at a time.

Explicit cursor functions:
- Can perform row-by-row processing beyond the first row returned by a query
- Keep track of the row that is currently being processed
- Enable the programmer to manually control explicit cursors in the PL/SQL block
Controlling Explicit Cursors

Now that you have a conceptual understanding of cursors, review the steps to use them.

1. In the declarative section of a PL/SQL block, declare the cursor by naming it and defining the structure of the query to be associated with it.
2. Open the cursor.
   The OPEN statement executes the query and binds any variables that are referenced. Rows identified by the query are called the active set and are now available for fetching.
3. Fetch data from the cursor.
   In the flow diagram shown in the slide, after each fetch, you test the cursor for any existing row. If there are no more rows to process, you must close the cursor.
4. Close the cursor.
   The CLOSE statement releases the active set of rows. It is now possible to reopen the cursor to establish a fresh active set.
Controlling Explicit Cursors (continued)

A PL/SQL program opens a cursor, processes rows returned by a query, and then closes the cursor. The cursor marks the current position in the active set.

1. The `OPEN` statement executes the query associated with the cursor, identifies the active set, and positions the cursor at the first row.
2. The `FETCH` statement retrieves the current row and advances the cursor to the next row until there are no more rows or a specified condition is met.
3. The `CLOSE` statement releases the cursor.
Agenda

- What are explicit cursors?
- Using explicit cursors
- Using cursors with parameters
- Locking rows and referencing the current row
Declaring the Cursor

Syntax:

```sql
CURSOR cursor_name IS
    select_statement;
```

Examples:

```sql
DECLARE
    CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
    SELECT employee_id, last_name FROM employees
    WHERE department_id = 30;
```

```sql
DECLARE
    v_locid NUMBER := 1700;
    CURSOR c_dept_cursor IS
    SELECT * FROM departments
    WHERE location_id = v_locid;
```

Declaring the Cursor

The syntax to declare a cursor is shown in the slide. In the syntax:

- `cursor_name` is a PL/SQL identifier.
- `select_statement` is a `SELECT` statement without an `INTO` clause.

The active set of a cursor is determined by the `SELECT` statement in the cursor declaration. It is mandatory to have an `INTO` clause for a `SELECT` statement in PL/SQL. However, note that the `SELECT` statement in the cursor declaration cannot have an `INTO` clause. That is because you are only defining a cursor in the declarative section and not retrieving any rows into the cursor.

Note

- Do not include the `INTO` clause in the cursor declaration because it appears later in the `FETCH` statement.
- If you want the rows to be processed in a specific sequence, use the `ORDER BY` clause in the query.
- The cursor can be any valid `SELECT` statement, including joins, subqueries, and so on.
Declaring the Cursor (continued)

The `c_emp_cursor` cursor is declared to retrieve the `employee_id` and `last_name` columns for those employees working in the department with `department_id` 30.

The `c_dept_cursor` cursor is declared to retrieve all the details for the department with the `location_id` 1700. Note that a variable is used while declaring the cursor. These variables are considered bind variables, which must be visible when you are declaring the cursor. These variables are examined only once at the time the cursor opens. You have learned that explicit cursors are used when you have to retrieve and operate on multiple rows in PL/SQL. However, this example shows that you can use the explicit cursor even if your `SELECT` statement returns only one row.
Opening the Cursor

The `OPEN` statement executes the query associated with the cursor, identifies the active set, and positions the cursor pointer at the first row. The `OPEN` statement is included in the executable section of the PL/SQL block.

`OPEN` is an executable statement that performs the following operations:

1. Dynamically allocates memory for a context area
2. Parses the `SELECT` statement
3. Binds the input variables (sets the values for the input variables by obtaining their memory addresses)
4. Identifies the active set (the set of rows that satisfy the search criteria). Rows in the active set are not retrieved into variables when the `OPEN` statement is executed. Rather, the `FETCH` statement retrieves the rows from the cursor to the variables.
5. Positions the pointer to the first row in the active set

**Note:** If a query returns no rows when the cursor is opened, PL/SQL does not raise an exception. You can find out the number of rows returned with an explicit cursor by using the `<cursor_name>%ROWCOUNT` attribute.
Fetching Data from the Cursor

The FETCH statement retrieves the rows from the cursor one at a time. After each fetch, the cursor advances to the next row in the active set. You can use the %NOTFOUND attribute to determine whether the entire active set has been retrieved.

Consider the example shown in the slide. Two variables, empno and lname, are declared to hold the fetched values from the cursor. Examine the FETCH statement.

You have successfully fetched the values from the cursor to the variables. However, there are six employees in department 30, but only one row was fetched. To fetch all rows, you must use loops. In the next slide, you see how a loop is used to fetch all the rows.

The FETCH statement performs the following operations:

1. Reads the data for the current row into the output PL/SQL variables
2. Advances the pointer to the next row in the active set
Fetching Data from the Cursor (continued)

You can include the same number of variables in the INTO clause of the FETCH statement as there are columns in the SELECT statement; be sure that the data types are compatible. Match each variable to correspond to the columns positionally. Alternatively, you can also define a record for the cursor and reference the record in the FETCH INTO clause. Finally, test to see whether the cursor contains rows. If a fetch acquires no values, there are no rows left to process in the active set and no error is recorded.
FETCHING DATA FROM THE CURSOR

DECLARE
CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
  SELECT employee_id, last_name FROM employees
  WHERE department_id = 30;
  v_empno employees.employee_id%TYPE;
  v_lname employees.last_name%TYPE;
BEGIN
  OPEN c_emp_cursor;
  LOOP
    FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_lname;
    EXIT WHEN c_emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( v_empno || ' ' || v_lname);
  END LOOP;
END;
/

FETCHING DATA FROM THE CURSOR (CONTINUED)

Observe that a simple LOOP is used to fetch all the rows. Also, the cursor attribute %NOTFOUND is used to test for the exit condition. The output of the PL/SQL block is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>anonymous block completed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>114  Raphaely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115   Khoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116    Raida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117   Tobias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118   Himuro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119  Colmenares</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Closing the Cursor

The CLOSE statement disables the cursor, releases the context area, and “undefines” the active set. Close the cursor after completing the processing of the FETCH statement. You can reopen the cursor if required. A cursor can be reopened only if it is closed. If you attempt to fetch data from a cursor after it is closed, an INVALID_CURSOR exception is raised.

**Note:** Although it is possible to terminate the PL/SQL block without closing cursors, you should make it a habit to close any cursor that you declare explicitly to free resources.

There is a maximum limit on the number of open cursors per session, which is determined by the OPEN_CURSORS parameter in the database parameter file. (OPEN_CURSORS = 50 by default.)

```sql
... LOOP
  FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO empno, lname;
  EXIT WHEN c_emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( v_empno || ' ' || v_lname);
END LOOP;
CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
END;
/```
Cursors and Records

Process the rows of the active set by fetching values into a PL/SQL record.

```plsql
DECLARE
    CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
        SELECT employee_id, last_name FROM employees
        WHERE department_id = 30;
    v_emp_record c_emp_cursor%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
    OPEN c_emp_cursor;
    LOOP
        FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO v_emp_record;
        EXIT WHEN c_emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( v_emp_record.employee_id
                                ||' '||v_emp_record.last_name);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
END;
```

Cursors and Records

You have already seen that you can define records that have the structure of columns in a table. You can also define a record based on the selected list of columns in an explicit cursor. This is convenient for processing the rows of the active set, because you can simply fetch into the record. Therefore, the values of the rows are loaded directly into the corresponding fields of the record.
Cursor FOR Loops

Syntax:

```
FOR record_name IN cursor_name LOOP
    statement1;
    statement2;
    ...
END LOOP;
```

- The cursor FOR loop is a shortcut to process explicit cursors.
- Implicit open, fetch, exit, and close occur.
- The record is implicitly declared.

Cursor FOR Loops

You learned to fetch data from cursors by using simple loops. You now learn to use a cursor FOR loop, which processes rows in an explicit cursor. It is a shortcut because the cursor is opened, a row is fetched once for each iteration in the loop, the loop exits when the last row is processed, and the cursor is closed automatically. The loop itself is terminated automatically at the end of the iteration where the last row is fetched.

In the syntax:

- `record_name` is the name of the implicitly declared record
- `cursor_name` is a PL/SQL identifier for the previously declared cursor

Guidelines

- Do not declare the record that controls the loop; it is declared implicitly.
- Test the cursor attributes during the loop if required.
- Supply the parameters for a cursor, if required, in parentheses following the cursor name in the FOR statement.
Cursor FOR Loops

DECLARE
CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
SELECT employee_id, last_name FROM employees
WHERE department_id =30;
BEGIN
FOR emp_record IN c_emp_cursor LOOP
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( emp_record.employee_id
                  ||' ' ||emp_record.last_name);
END LOOP;
END;
/

Cursor FOR Loops (continued)

The example that was used to demonstrate the usage of a simple loop to fetch data from cursors is rewritten to use the cursor FOR loop.

emp_record is the record that is implicitly declared. You can access the fetched data with this implicit record (as shown in the slide). Observe that no variables are declared to hold the fetched data using the INTO clause. The code does not have the OPEN and CLOSE statements to open and close the cursor, respectively.
Explicit Cursor Attributes

Use explicit cursor attributes to obtain status information about a cursor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%ISOPEN</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Evaluates to TRUE if the cursor is open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%NOTFOUND</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Evaluates to TRUE if the most recent fetch does not return a row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%FOUND</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Evaluates to TRUE if the most recent fetch returns a row; complement of %NOTFOUND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%ROWCOUNT</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Evaluates to the total number of rows returned so far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explicit Cursor Attributes

As with implicit cursors, there are four attributes for obtaining the status information of a cursor. When appended to the cursor variable name, these attributes return useful information about the execution of a cursor manipulation statement.

Note: You cannot reference cursor attributes directly in a SQL statement.
%ISOPEN Attribute

- You can fetch rows only when the cursor is open.
- Use the %ISOPEN cursor attribute before performing a fetch to test whether the cursor is open.

Example:

```sql
IF NOT c_emp_cursor%ISOPEN THEN
  OPEN c_emp_cursor;
END IF;
LOOP
  FETCH c_emp_cursor...
```

Note: %ISOPEN returns the status of the cursor: TRUE if open and FALSE if not.
%ROWCOUNT and %NOTFOUND: Example

The example in the slide retrieves the first 10 employees one by one. This example shows how the %ROWCOUNT and %NOTFOUND attributes can be used for exit conditions in a loop.
Cursor FOR Loops Using Subqueries

There is no need to declare the cursor.

```
BEGIN
    FOR emp_record IN (SELECT employee_id, last_name
                        FROM employees WHERE department_id =30)
        LOOP
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( emp_record.employee_id
                                ||' '||emp_record.last_name);
        END LOOP;
END;
/
```

Cursor FOR Loops Using Subqueries

Note that there is no declarative section in this PL/SQL block. The difference between the cursor FOR loops using subqueries and the cursor FOR loop lies in the cursor declaration. If you are writing cursor FOR loops using subqueries, you need not declare the cursor in the declarative section. You have to provide the SELECT statement that determines the active set in the loop itself.

The example that was used to illustrate a cursor FOR loop is rewritten to illustrate a cursor FOR loop using subqueries.

Note: You cannot reference explicit cursor attributes if you use a subquery in a cursor FOR loop because you cannot give the cursor an explicit name.
Agenda

- What are explicit cursors?
- Using explicit cursors
- Using cursors with parameters
- Locking rows and referencing the current row
Cursors with Parameters

Syntax:

```sql
CURSOR cursor_name
[(parameter_name datatype, ...)]
IS
select_statement;
```

- Pass parameter values to a cursor when the cursor is opened and the query is executed.
- Open an explicit cursor several times with a different active set each time.

```sql
OPEN cursor_name(parameter_value,.....) ;
```

Cursors with Parameters

You can pass parameters to a cursor. This means that you can open and close an explicit cursor several times in a block, returning a different active set on each occasion. For each execution, the previous cursor is closed and reopened with a new set of parameters.

Each formal parameter in the cursor declaration must have a corresponding actual parameter in the OPEN statement. Parameter data types are the same as those for scalar variables, but you do not give them sizes. The parameter names are for reference in the query expression of the cursor.

In the syntax:

- `cursor_name` is a PL/SQL identifier for the declared cursor
- `parameter_name` is the name of a parameter
- `datatype` is the scalar data type of the parameter
- `select_statement` is a SELECT statement without the INTO clause

The parameter notation does not offer greater functionality; it simply allows you to specify input values easily and clearly. This is particularly useful when the same cursor is referenced repeatedly.
Cursors with Parameters

Parameter data types are the same as those for scalar variables, but you do not give them sizes. The parameter names are for reference in the cursor’s query. In the following example, a cursor is declared and is defined with one parameter:

```
DECLARE
  CURSOR c_emp_cursor (deptno NUMBER) IS
  SELECT employee_id, last_name
  FROM employees
  WHERE department_id = deptno;
BEGIN
  OPEN c_emp_cursor (10);
  ...
  CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
  OPEN c_emp_cursor (20);
  ...
```

Cursors with Parameters (continued)

You can pass parameters to the cursor that is used in a cursor FOR loop:

```
DECLARE
  CURSOR c_emp_cursor (p_deptno NUMBER, p_job VARCHAR2) IS
  SELECT ...
BEGIN
  FOR emp_record IN c_emp_cursor(10, 'Sales') LOOP ...
```
Agenda

• What are explicit cursors?
• Using explicit cursors
• Using cursors with parameters
• Locking rows and referencing the current row
FOR UPDATE Clause

Syntax:

```
SELECT ... FROM ... FOR UPDATE [OF column_reference] [NOWAIT | WAIT n];
```

- Use explicit locking to deny access to other sessions for the duration of a transaction.
- Lock the rows before the update or delete.

FOR UPDATE Clause

If there are multiple sessions for a single database, there is the possibility that the rows of a particular table were updated after you opened your cursor. You see the updated data only when you reopen the cursor. Therefore, it is better to have locks on the rows before you update or delete rows. You can lock the rows with the FOR UPDATE clause in the cursor query.

In the syntax:

- `column_reference` is a column in the table against which the query is performed (A list of columns may also be used.)
- `NOWAIT` Returns an Oracle Server error if the rows are locked by another session.

The FOR UPDATE clause is the last clause in a SELECT statement, even after ORDER BY (if it exists). When you want to query multiple tables, you can use the FOR UPDATE clause to confine row locking to particular tables. FOR UPDATE OF `col_name(s)` locks rows only in tables that contain `col_name(s)`.
FOR UPDATE Clause (continued)

The SELECT ... FOR UPDATE statement identifies the rows that are to be updated or deleted, and then locks each row in the result set. This is useful when you want to base an update on the existing values in a row. In that case, you must make sure that the row is not changed by another session before the update.

The optional NOWAIT keyword tells the Oracle Server not to wait if the requested rows have been locked by another user. Control is immediately returned to your program so that it can do other work before trying again to acquire the lock. If you omit the NOWAIT keyword, the Oracle Server waits until the rows are available.

Example:

DECLARE
    CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
        SELECT employee_id, last_name, FROM employees
        WHERE department_id = 80 FOR UPDATE OF salary NOWAIT;
...

If the Oracle Server cannot acquire the locks on the rows it needs in a SELECT FOR UPDATE operation, it waits indefinitely. Use NOWAIT to handle such situations. If the rows are locked by another session and you have specified NOWAIT, opening the cursor results in an error. You can try to open the cursor later. You can use WAIT instead of NOWAIT, specify the number of seconds to wait, and then determine whether the rows are unlocked. If the rows are still locked after \( n \) seconds, an error is returned.

It is not mandatory for the FOR UPDATE OF clause to refer to a column, but it is recommended for better readability and maintenance.
WHERE CURRENT OF Clause

Syntax:

```
WHERE CURRENT OF cursor ;
```

- Use cursors to update or delete the current row.
- Include the FOR UPDATE clause in the cursor query to first lock the rows.
- Use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause to reference the current row from an explicit cursor.

```
UPDATE employees 
SET      salary = ... 
WHERE CURRENT OF c_emp_cursor;
```

WHERE CURRENT OF Clause

The WHERE CURRENT OF clause is used in conjunction with the FOR UPDATE clause to refer to the current row in an explicit cursor. The WHERE CURRENT OF clause is used in the UPDATE or DELETE statement, whereas the FOR UPDATE clause is specified in the cursor declaration. You can use the combination for updating and deleting the current row from the corresponding database table. This enables you to apply updates and deletes to the row currently being addressed, without the need to explicitly reference the row ID. You must include the FOR UPDATE clause in the cursor query so that the rows are locked on OPEN.

In the syntax:

```
cursor
```

Is the name of a declared cursor (The cursor must have been declared with the FOR UPDATE clause.)
Quiz

Implicit cursors are declared by PL/SQL implicitly for all DML and PL/SQL `SELECT` statements. The Oracle Server implicitly opens a cursor to process each SQL statement that is not associated with an explicitly declared cursor.

1. True
2. False

Answer: 1
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned to:

• Distinguish cursor types:
  – Implicit cursors are used for all DML statements and single-row queries.
  – Explicit cursors are used for queries of zero, one, or more rows.

• Create and handle explicit cursors

• Use simple loops and cursor FOR loops to handle multiple rows in the cursors

• Evaluate cursor status by using cursor attributes

• Use the FOR UPDATE and WHERE CURRENT OF clauses to update or delete the current fetched row

Summary

The Oracle Server uses work areas to execute SQL statements and store processing information. You can use a PL/SQL construct called a cursor to name a work area and access its stored information. There are two kinds of cursors: implicit and explicit. PL/SQL implicitly declares a cursor for all SQL data manipulation statements, including queries that return only one row. For queries that return multiple rows, you must explicitly declare a cursor to process the rows individually.

Every explicit cursor and cursor variable has four attributes: %FOUND, %ISOPEN, %NOTFOUND, and %ROWCOUNT. When appended to the cursor variable name, these attributes return useful information about the execution of a SQL statement. You can use cursor attributes in procedural statements but not in SQL statements.

Use simple loops or cursor FOR loops to operate on the multiple rows fetched by the cursor. If you are using simple loops, you have to open, fetch, and close the cursor; however, cursor FOR loops do this implicitly. If you are updating or deleting rows, lock the rows by using a FOR UPDATE clause. This ensures that the data you are using is not updated by another session after you open the cursor. Use a WHERE CURRENT OF clause in conjunction with the FOR UPDATE clause to reference the current row fetched by the cursor.
Practice 7: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

- Declaring and using explicit cursors to query rows of a table
- Using a cursor `FOR` loop
- Applying cursor attributes to test the cursor status
- Declaring and using cursors with parameters
- Using the `FOR UPDATE` and `WHERE CURRENT OF` clauses

Practice 7: Overview

In this practice, you apply your knowledge of cursors to process a number of rows from a table and populate another table with the results using a cursor `FOR` loop. You also write a cursor with parameters.
Handling Exceptions
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Define PL/SQL exceptions
• Recognize unhandled exceptions
• List and use different types of PL/SQL exception handlers
• Trap unanticipated errors
• Describe the effect of exception propagation in nested blocks
• Customize PL/SQL exception messages

Objectives

You learned to write PL/SQL blocks with a declarative section and an executable section. All the SQL and PL/SQL code that must be executed is written in the executable block.

So far it has been assumed that the code works satisfactorily if you take care of compile-time errors. However, the code may cause some unanticipated errors at run time. In this lesson, you learn how to deal with such errors in the PL/SQL block.
Agenda

- Understanding PL/SQL exceptions
- Trapping exceptions
What Is an Exception?

Consider the example shown in the slide. There are no syntax errors in the code, which means that you must be able to successfully execute the anonymous block. The `SELECT` statement in the block retrieves the last name of John.

However, you see the following error report when you execute the code:

```
Error report:
ORA-01422: exact fetch returns more than requested number of rows
01422. 00000 - "exact fetch returns more than requested number of rows"
*Cause: The number specified in exact fetch is less than the rows returned.
*Action: Rewrite the query or change number of rows requested
```

The code does not work as expected. You expected the `SELECT` statement to retrieve only one row; however, it retrieves multiple rows. Such errors that occur at run time are called exceptions. When an exception occurs, the PL/SQL block is terminated. You can handle such exceptions in your PL/SQL block.
Handling the Exception: An Example

You have previously learned how to write PL/SQL blocks with a declarative section (beginning with the DECLARE keyword) and an executable section (beginning and ending with the BEGIN and END keywords, respectively).

For exception handling, you include another optional section called the exception section.

- This section begins with the EXCEPTION keyword.
- If present, this must be the last section in a PL/SQL block.

Example

In the example in the slide, the code from the previous slide is rewritten to handle the exception that occurred. The output of the code is shown in the slide as well.

By adding the EXCEPTION section of the code, the PL/SQL program does not terminate abruptly. When the exception is raised, the control shifts to the exception section and all the statements in the exception section are executed. The PL/SQL block terminates with normal, successful completion.
Understanding Exceptions with PL/SQL

- An exception is a PL/SQL error that is raised during program execution.
- An exception can be raised:
  - Implicitly by the Oracle Server
  - Explicitly by the program
- An exception can be handled:
  - By trapping it with a handler
  - By propagating it to the calling environment

Understanding Exceptions with PL/SQL
An exception is an error in PL/SQL that is raised during the execution of a block. A block always terminates when PL/SQL raises an exception, but you can specify an exception handler to perform final actions before the block ends.

Two Methods for Raising an Exception
- An Oracle error occurs and the associated exception is raised automatically. For example, if the ORA-01403 error occurs when no rows are retrieved from the database in a SELECT statement, PL/SQL raises the NO_DATA_FOUND exception. These errors are converted into predefined exceptions.
- Depending on the business functionality your program implements, you may have to explicitly raise an exception. You raise an exception explicitly by issuing the RAISE statement in the block. The raised exception may be either user-defined or predefined. There are also some non-predefined Oracle errors. These errors are any standard Oracle errors that are not predefined. You can explicitly declare exceptions and associate them with the non-predefined Oracle errors.
Handling Exceptions

**Handling Exceptions**

**Trapping an Exception**

Include an `EXCEPTION` section in your PL/SQL program to trap exceptions. If the exception is raised in the executable section of the block, processing branches to the corresponding exception handler in the exception section of the block. If PL/SQL successfully handles the exception, the exception does not propagate to the enclosing block or to the calling environment. The PL/SQL block terminates successfully.

**Propagating an Exception**

If the exception is raised in the executable section of the block and there is no corresponding exception handler, the PL/SQL block terminates with failure and the exception is propagated to an enclosing block or to the calling environment. The calling environment can be any application (such as SQL*Plus that invokes the PL/SQL program).
Exception Types

There are three types of exceptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Directions for Handling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Predefined Oracle Server error</td>
<td>One of approximately 20 errors that occur most often in PL/SQL code</td>
<td>You need not declare these exceptions. They are predefined by the Oracle server and are raised implicitly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-predefined Oracle Server error</td>
<td>Any other standard Oracle Server error</td>
<td>You need to declare these within the declarative section; the Oracle server raises the error implicitly, and you can catch the error in the exception handler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-defined error</td>
<td>A condition that the developer determines is abnormal</td>
<td>You need to declare in the declarative section and raise explicitly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Some application tools with client-side PL/SQL (such as Oracle Developer Forms) have their own exceptions.
Agenda

• Understanding PL/SQL exceptions
• Trapping exceptions
Syntax to Trap Exceptions

EXCEPTION

WHEN exception1 [OR exception2 . . .] THEN
  statement1;
  statement2;
  . . .

WREN exception3 [OR exception4 . . .] THEN
  statement1;
  statement2;
  . . .]

[WHEN OTHERS THEN
  statement1;
  statement2;
  . . .]

Syntax to Trap Exceptions

You can trap any error by including a corresponding handler within the exception-handling section of the PL/SQL block. Each handler consists of a WHEN clause, which specifies an exception name, followed by a sequence of statements to be executed when that exception is raised.

You can include any number of handlers within an EXCEPTION section to handle specific exceptions. However, you cannot have multiple handlers for a single exception.

Exception trapping syntax includes the following elements:

- **exception**  Is the standard name of a predefined exception or the name of a user-defined exception declared within the declarative section
- **statement**  Is one or more PL/SQL or SQL statements
- **OTHERS**    Is an optional exception-handling clause that traps any exceptions that have not been explicitly handled
Exception Trapping Syntax (continued)

**WHEN OTHERS** Exception Handler

As stated previously, the exception-handling section traps only those exceptions that are specified.

To trap any exceptions that are not specified, you use the **OTHERS** exception handler. This option traps any exception not yet handled. For this reason, if the **OTHERS** handler is used, it must be the last exception handler that is defined.

For example:

```plsql
WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
  statement1;
...
WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
  statement1;
...
WHEN OTHERS THEN
  statement1;
```

**Example**

Consider the preceding example. If the **NO_DATA_FOUND** exception is raised by the program, the statements in the corresponding handler are executed. If the **TOO_MANY_ROWS** exception is raised, the statements in the corresponding handler are executed. However, if some other exception is raised, the statements in the **OTHERS** exception handler are executed.

The **OTHERS** handler traps all the exceptions that are not already trapped. Some Oracle tools have their own predefined exceptions that you can raise to cause events in the application. The **OTHERS** handler also traps these exceptions.
Guidelines for Trapping Exceptions

• The EXCEPTION keyword starts the exception-handling section.
• Several exception handlers are allowed.
• Only one handler is processed before leaving the block.
• WHEN OTHERS is the last clause.
Trapping Predefined Oracle Server Errors

- Reference the predefined name in the exception-handling routine.
- Sample predefined exceptions:
  - NO_DATA_FOUND
  - TOO_MANY_ROWS
  - INVALID_CURSOR
  - ZERO_DIVIDE
  - DUP_VAL_ON_INDEX

Note: PL/SQL declares predefined exceptions in the STANDARD package.
### Predefined Exceptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception Name</th>
<th>Oracle Server Error Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS INTO NULL</td>
<td>ORA-06530</td>
<td>Attempted to assign values to the attributes of an uninitialized object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE NOT FOUND</td>
<td>ORA-06592</td>
<td>None of the choices in the WHEN clauses of a CASE statement are selected, and there is no ELSE clause.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTION IS NULL</td>
<td>ORA-06531</td>
<td>Attempted to apply collection methods other than EXISTS to an uninitialized nested table or VARRAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CURSOR_ALREADY_OPEN</td>
<td>ORA-06511</td>
<td>Attempted to open an already open cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUP VAL ON INDEX</td>
<td>ORA-00001</td>
<td>Attempted to insert a duplicate value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID_CURSOR</td>
<td>ORA-01001</td>
<td>Illegal cursor operation occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID NUMBER</td>
<td>ORA-01722</td>
<td>Conversion of character string to number failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGIN_DENIED</td>
<td>ORA-01017</td>
<td>Logging on to the Oracle server with an invalid username or password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO DATA FOUND</td>
<td>ORA-01403</td>
<td>Single row SELECT returned no data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT_LOGGED_ON</td>
<td>ORA-01012</td>
<td>The PL/SQL program issues a database call without being connected to the Oracle server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRAM_ERROR</td>
<td>ORA-06501</td>
<td>PL/SQL has an internal problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROWTYPE_MISMATCH</td>
<td>ORA-06504</td>
<td>The host cursor variable and PL/SQL cursor variable involved in an assignment have incompatible return types.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Predefined Exceptions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception Name</th>
<th>Oracle Server Error Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STORAGE_ERROR</td>
<td>ORA-06500</td>
<td>PL/SQL ran out of memory, or memory is corrupted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT</td>
<td>ORA-06533</td>
<td>Referenced a nested table or VARRAY element by using an index number larger than the number of elements in the collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSCRIPT_OUTSIDE_LIMIT</td>
<td>ORA-06532</td>
<td>Referenced a nested table or VARRAY element by using an index number that is outside the legal range (for example, –1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_INVALID_ROWID</td>
<td>ORA-01410</td>
<td>The conversion of a character string into a universal ROWID fails because the character string does not represent a valid ROWID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEOUT_ON_RESOURCE</td>
<td>ORA-00051</td>
<td>Time-out occurred while the Oracle server was waiting for a resource.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOO_MANY_ROWS</td>
<td>ORA-01422</td>
<td>Single-row SELECT returned multiple rows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALUE_ERROR</td>
<td>ORA-06502</td>
<td>Arithmetic, conversion, truncation, or size-constraint error occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO_DIVIDE</td>
<td>ORA-01476</td>
<td>Attempted to divide by zero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trapping Non-Predefined Oracle Server Errors

Non-predefined exceptions are similar to predefined exceptions; however, they are not defined as PL/SQL exceptions in the Oracle Server. They are standard Oracle errors. You create exceptions with standard Oracle errors by using the `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` function. Such exceptions are called non-predefined exceptions.

You can trap a non-predefined Oracle Server error by declaring it first. The declared exception is raised implicitly. In PL/SQL, `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` tells the compiler to associate an exception name with an Oracle error number. This enables you to refer to any internal exception by name and to write a specific handler for it.

**Note:** `PRAGMA` (also called *pseudoinstructions*) is the keyword that signifies that the statement is a compiler directive, which is not processed when the PL/SQL block is executed. Rather, it directs the PL/SQL compiler to interpret all occurrences of the exception name within the block as the associated Oracle Server error number.
Non-Predefined Error Trapping: Example

To trap Oracle Server error 01400 ("cannot insert NULL"): 

```
DECLARE
  e_insert_excep EXCEPTION;
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO departments
    (department_id, department_name) VALUES (280, NULL);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN e_insert_excep THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('INSERT OPERATION FAILED');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
END;
/
```

Non-Predefined Error Trapping: Example

The example illustrates the three steps associated with trapping a non-predefined error:

1. Declare the name of the exception in the declarative section, using the syntax:
   ```
   exception   EXCEPTION;
   ```
   In the syntax, `exception` is the name of the exception.

2. Associate the declared exception with the standard Oracle Server error number by using
   the `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` function. Use the following syntax:
   ```
   PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT(exception, error_number);
   ```
   In the syntax, `exception` is the previously declared exception and `error_number` is a
   standard Oracle Server error number.

3. Reference the declared exception within the corresponding exception-handling routine.

Example

The example in the slide tries to insert the NULL value for the `department_name` column of
the `departments` table. However, the operation is not successful because `department_name` is a NOT NULL column. Note the following line in the example:
```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
```

The SQLERRM function is used to retrieve the error message. You learn more about SQLERRM
in the next few slides.
Functions for Trapping Exceptions

- **SQLCODE**: Returns the numeric value for the error code
- **SQLERRM**: Returns the message associated with the error number

Functions for Trapping Exceptions

When an exception occurs, you can identify the associated error code or error message by using two functions. Based on the values of the code or the message, you can decide which subsequent actions to take.

**SQLCODE** returns the Oracle error number for internal exceptions. **SQLERRM** returns the message associated with the error number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQLCODE</td>
<td>Returns the numeric value for the error code (You can assign it to a NUMBER variable.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLERRM</td>
<td>Returns character data containing the message associated with the error number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SQLCODE Values: Examples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SQLCODE Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No exception encountered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>User-defined exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+100</td>
<td>NO_DATA_FOUND exception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative number</td>
<td>Another Oracle server error number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions for Trapping Exceptions

```
DECLARE
  error_code      NUMBER;
  error_message   VARCHAR2(255);
BEGIN
  ...
EXCEPTION
  ...
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    ROLLBACK;
    error_code := SQLCODE;
    error_message := SQLERRM;
    INSERT INTO errors (e_user, e_date, error_code, error_message) VALUES(USER, SYSDATE, error_code, error_message);
END;
/
```

Functions for Trapping Exceptions (continued)

When an exception is trapped in the WHEN OTHERS exception handler, you can use a set of generic functions to identify those errors. The example in the slide illustrates the values of SQLCODE and SQLERRM assigned to variables, and then those variables being used in a SQL statement.

You cannot use SQLCODE or SQLERRM directly in a SQL statement. Instead, you must assign their values to local variables, and then use the variables in the SQL statement, as shown in the following example:

```
DECLARE
  err_num NUMBER;
  err_msg VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
  ...
EXCEPTION
  ...
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    err_num := SQLCODE;
    err_msg := SUBSTR(SQLERRM, 1, 100);
    INSERT INTO errors VALUES (err_num, err_msg);
END;
/
```
Trapping User-Defined Exceptions

PL/SQL enables you to define your own exceptions depending on the requirements of your application. For example, you may prompt the user to enter a department number. Define an exception to deal with error conditions in the input data. Check whether the department number exists. If it does not, you may have to raise the user-defined exception.

PL/SQL exceptions must be:

- Declared in the declarative section of a PL/SQL block
- Raised explicitly with RAISE statements
- Handled in the EXCEPTION section
Trapping User-Defined Exceptions

You trap a user-defined exception by declaring it and raising it explicitly.

1. Declare the name of the user-defined exception within the declarative section.
   Syntax:
   
   ```sql
   exception EXCEPTION;
   ```
   
   In the syntax, `exception` is the name of the exception.

2. Use the `RAISE` statement to raise the exception explicitly within the executable section.
   Syntax:
   
   ```sql
   RAISE exception;
   ```
   
   In the syntax, `exception` is the previously declared exception.

3. Reference the declared exception within the corresponding exception-handling routine.

Example

The block shown in the slide updates the `department_name` of a department. The user supplies the department number and the new name. If the supplied department number does not exist, no rows are updated in the `departments` table. An exception is raised and a message is printed for the user that an invalid department number was entered.

Note: Use the `RAISE` statement by itself within an exception handler to raise the same exception again and propagate it back to the calling environment.
Propagating Exceptions in a Subblock

Subblocks can handle an exception or pass the exception to the enclosing block.

```
DECLARE
  . . .
e_no_rows exception;
e_integrity exception;
PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT (e_integrity, -2292);
BEGIN
  FOR c_record IN emp_cursor LOOP
    BEGIN
      SELECT ...
      UPDATE ...
      IF SQL\NOTFOUND THEN
        RAISE e_no_rows;
      END IF;
    END;
  END LOOP;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN e_integrity THEN . . .
  WHEN e_no_rows THEN . . .
END;
/
```

Propagating Exceptions in a Subblock

When a subblock handles an exception, it terminates normally. Control resumes in the enclosing block immediately after the subblock’s END statement.

However, if a PL/SQL raises an exception and the current block does not have a handler for that exception, the exception propagates to successive enclosing blocks until it finds a handler. If none of these blocks handles the exception, an unhandled exception in the host environment results.

When the exception propagates to an enclosing block, the remaining executable actions in that block are bypassed.

One advantage of this behavior is that you can enclose statements that require their own exclusive error handling in their own block, while leaving more general exception handling to the enclosing block.

Note in the example that the exceptions (no_rows and integrity) are declared in the outer block. In the inner block, when the no_rows exception is raised, PL/SQL looks for the exception to be handled in the subblock. Because the exception is not handled in the subblock, the exception propagates to the outer block, where PL/SQL finds the handler.
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure

Syntax:

```
raise_application_error (error_number, message[, {TRUE | FALSE}]);
```

- You can use this procedure to issue user-defined error messages from stored subprograms.
- You can report errors to your application and avoid returning unhandled exceptions.

Use the RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR procedure to communicate a predefined exception interactively by returning a nonstandard error code and error message. With RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR, you can report errors to your application and avoid returning unhandled exceptions.

In the syntax:

- `error_number` is a user-specified number for the exception between −20,000 and −20,999.
- `message` is the user-specified message for the exception; is a character string up to 2,048 bytes long.
- `TRUE | FALSE` is an optional Boolean parameter (If TRUE, the error is placed on the stack of previous errors. If FALSE, which is the default, the error replaces all previous errors.)
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure

- Is used in two different places:
  - Executable section
  - Exception section
- Returns error conditions to the user in a manner consistent with other Oracle Server errors

RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure (continued)

The RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR procedure can be used in either the executable section or the exception section of a PL/SQL program, or both. The returned error is consistent with how the Oracle Server produces a predefined, non-predefined, or user-defined error. The error number and message are displayed to the user.
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure

Executable section:

```
BEGIN
  ...
  DELETE FROM employees
  WHERE manager_id = v_mgr;
  IF SQL%NOTFOUND THEN
    RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20202, 
      'This is not a valid manager');
  END IF;
  ...
```

Exception section:

```
...
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR (-20201, 
      'Manager is not a valid employee.');
END;
/
```

RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR Procedure (continued)

The slide shows that the RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR procedure can be used in both the executable and the exception sections of a PL/SQL program.

Here is another example of using the RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR procedure:

```
DECLARE
  e_name EXCEPTION;
BEGIN
  ...
  DELETE FROM employees
  WHERE last_name = 'Higgins';
  IF SQL%NOTFOUND THEN RAISE e_name;
  END IF;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN e_name THEN
    RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR (-20999, 'This is not a valid last name');
  END;
/
```
Quiz

You can trap any error by including a corresponding handler within the exception-handling section of the PL/SQL block.

1. True
2. False

Answer: 1

You can trap any error by including a corresponding handler within the exception-handling section of the PL/SQL block. Each handler consists of a WHEN clause, which specifies an exception name, followed by a sequence of statements to be executed when that exception is raised. You can include any number of handlers within an EXCEPTION section to handle specific exceptions. However, you cannot have multiple handlers for a single exception.
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned to:

- Define PL/SQL exceptions
- Add an EXCEPTION section to the PL/SQL block to deal with exceptions at run time
- Handle different types of exceptions:
  - Predefined exceptions
  - Non-predefined exceptions
  - User-defined exceptions
- Propagate exceptions in nested blocks and call applications

Summary

In this lesson, you learned how to deal with different types of exceptions. In PL/SQL, a warning or error condition at run time is called an exception. Predefined exceptions are error conditions that are defined by the Oracle Server. Non-predefined exceptions can be any standard Oracle Server errors. User-defined exceptions are exceptions specific to your application. The PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT function can be used to associate a declared exception name with an Oracle Server error.

You can define exceptions of your own in the declarative section of any PL/SQL block. For example, you can define an exception named INSUFFICIENT_FUNDS to flag overdrawn bank accounts.

When an error occurs, an exception is raised. Normal execution stops and transfers control to the exception-handling section of your PL/SQL block. Internal exceptions are raised implicitly (automatically) by the run-time system; however, user-defined exceptions must be raised explicitly. To handle raised exceptions, you write separate routines called exception handlers.
Practice 8: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

- Creating and invoking user-defined exceptions
- Handling named Oracle Server exceptions

Practice 8: Overview

In these practices, you create exception handlers for a predefined exception and a standard Oracle Server exception.
Introducing Stored Procedures and Functions
Objectives

After completing this lesson, you should be able to do the following:

• Differentiate between anonymous blocks and subprograms
• Create a simple procedure and invoke it from an anonymous block
• Create a simple function
• Create a simple function that accepts a parameter
• Differentiate between procedures and functions

Objectives

You learned about anonymous blocks. This lesson introduces you to named blocks, which are also called subprograms. Procedures and functions are PL/SQL subprograms. In the lesson, you learn to differentiate between anonymous blocks and subprograms.
Agenda

- Introducing procedures and functions
- Previewing procedures
- Previewing functions
Procedures and Functions

- Are named PL/SQL blocks
- Are called PL/SQL subprograms
- Have block structures similar to anonymous blocks:
  - Optional declarative section (without the DECLARE keyword)
  - Mandatory executable section
  - Optional section to handle exceptions

Up to this point, anonymous blocks were the only examples of PL/SQL code covered in this course. As the name indicates, anonymous blocks are unnamed executable PL/SQL blocks. Because they are unnamed, they can be neither reused nor stored for later use.

Procedures and functions are named PL/SQL blocks that are also known as subprograms. These subprograms are compiled and stored in the database. The block structure of the subprograms is similar to the structure of anonymous blocks. Subprograms can be declared not only at the schema level but also within any other PL/SQL block. A subprogram contains the following sections:

- **Declarative section:** Subprograms can have an optional declarative section. However, unlike anonymous blocks, the declarative section of a subprogram does not start with the DECLARE keyword. The optional declarative section follows the IS or AS keyword in the subprogram declaration.
- **Executable section:** This is the mandatory section of the subprogram, which contains the implementation of the business logic. Looking at the code in this section, you can easily determine the business functionality of the subprogram. This section begins and ends with the BEGIN and END keywords, respectively.
- **Exception section:** This is an optional section that is included to handle exceptions.
Differences Between Anonymous Blocks and Subprograms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anonymous Blocks</th>
<th>Subprograms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unnamed PL/SQL blocks</td>
<td>Named PL/SQL blocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiled every time</td>
<td>Compiled only once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not stored in the database</td>
<td>Stored in the database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot be invoked by other applications</td>
<td>Named and, therefore, can be invoked by other applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not return values</td>
<td>If functions, must return values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot take parameters</td>
<td>Can take parameters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Differences Between Anonymous Blocks and Subprograms

The table in the slide not only shows the differences between anonymous blocks and subprograms, but also highlights the general benefits of subprograms.

Anonymous blocks are not persistent database objects. They are compiled every time they are to be executed. They are not stored in the database for reuse. If you want to reuse them, you must rerun the script that creates the anonymous block, which causes recompilation and execution.

Procedures and functions are compiled and stored in the database in a compiled form. They are recompiled only when they are modified. Because they are stored in the database, any application can make use of these subprograms based on appropriate permissions. The calling application can pass parameters to the procedures if the procedure is designed to accept parameters. Similarly, a calling application can retrieve a value if it invokes a function or a procedure.
Agenda

• Introducing procedures and functions
• Previewing procedures
• Previewing functions
Procedure: Syntax

The slide shows the syntax for creating procedures. In the syntax:

- `procedure_name` Is the name of the procedure to be created
- `argument` Is the name given to the procedure parameter. Every argument is associated with a mode and data type. You can have any number of arguments separated by commas.
- `mode` Mode of argument:
  - IN (default)
  - OUT
  - IN OUT
- `datatype` Is the data type of the associated parameter. The data type of parameters cannot have explicit size; instead, use %TYPE.
- `procedure_body` Is the PL/SQL block that makes up the code

The argument list is optional in a procedure declaration. You learn about procedures in detail in the course titled *Oracle Database 11g: Develop PL/SQL Program Units*. 
Creating a Procedure

In the code example, the `add_dept` procedure inserts a new department with department ID 280 and department name `ST-Curriculum`.

In addition, the example shows the following:
- The declarative section of a procedure starts immediately after the procedure declaration and does not begin with the `DECLARE` keyword.
- The procedure declares two variables, `dept_id` and `dept_name`.
- The procedure uses the implicit cursor attribute or the `SQL%ROWCOUNT` SQL attribute to verify that the row was successfully inserted. A value of 1 should be returned in this case.

**Note:** See the following page for more notes on the example.
Procedure: Example

Note

- When you create any object, the entries are made to the `user_objects` table. When the code in the slide is executed successfully, you can check the `user_objects` table for the new objects by issuing the following command:

```
SELECT object_name, object_type FROM user_objects;
```

- The source of the procedure is stored in the `user_source` table. You can check the source for the procedure by issuing the following command:

```
SELECT * FROM user_source WHERE name='ADD_DEPT';
```
Invoking a Procedure

... 
BEGIN 
    add_dept; 
END; 
/
SELECT department_id, department_name FROM dept 
WHERE department_id=280;

Invoking the Procedure

The slide shows how to invoke a procedure from an anonymous block. You must include the call to the procedure in the executable section of the anonymous block. Similarly, you can invoke the procedure from any application, such as a Forms application or a Java application. The SELECT statement in the code checks to see whether the row was successfully inserted. You can also invoke a procedure with the SQL statement CALL <procedure_name>.
Agenda

- Introducing procedures and functions
- Previewing procedures
- Previewing functions
Function: Syntax

The slide shows the syntax for creating a function. In the syntax:

- `function_name` is the name of the function to be created.
- `argument` is the name given to the function parameter. (Every argument is associated with a mode and data type. You can have any number of arguments separated by a comma. You pass the argument when you invoke the function.)
- `mode` is the type of parameter. (Only `IN` parameters should be declared.)
- `datatype` is the data type of the associated parameter.
- `RETURN datatype` is the data type of the value returned by the function.
- `function_body` is the PL/SQL block that makes up the function code.

The argument list is optional in the function declaration. The difference between a procedure and a function is that a function must return a value to the calling program. Therefore, the syntax contains `return_type`, which specifies the data type of the value that the function returns. A procedure may return a value via an `OUT` or `IN OUT` parameter.
Creating a Function

```sql
CREATE FUNCTION check_sal RETURN Boolean IS
  v_dept_id employees.department_id%TYPE;
  v_empno employees.employee_id%TYPE;
  v_sal employees.salary%TYPE;
  v_avg_sal employees.salary%TYPE;
BEGIN
  v_empno:=205;
  SELECT salary, department_id INTO v_sal, v_dept_id FROM employees
  WHERE employee_id = v_empno;
  SELECT avg(salary) INTO v_avg_sal FROM employees WHERE department_id = v_dept_id;
  IF v_sal > v_avg_sal THEN
    RETURN TRUE;
  ELSE
    RETURN FALSE;
  END IF;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    RETURN NULL;
END;
```

Function: Example

The check_sal function is written to determine whether the salary of a particular employee is greater than or less than the average salary of all employees working in the same department. The function returns TRUE if the salary of the employee is greater than the average salary of the employees in the department; if not, it returns FALSE. The function returns NULL if a NO_DATA_FOUND exception is thrown.

Note that the function checks for the employee with the employee ID 205. The function is hard-coded to check only for this employee ID. If you want to check for any other employees, you must modify the function itself. You can solve this problem by declaring the function such that it accepts an argument. You can then pass the employee ID as parameter.
Invoking a Function

BEGIN
   IF (check_sal IS NULL) THEN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The function returned NULL due to exception');
   ELSIF (check_sal) THEN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary > average');
   ELSE
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary < average');
   END IF;
END;
/

Invoking the Function

You include the call to the function in the executable section of the anonymous block. The function is invoked as a part of a statement. Remember that the check_sal function returns Boolean or NULL. Thus the call to the function is included as the conditional expression for the IF block.

Note: You can use the DESCRIBE command to check the arguments and return type of the function, as in the following example:

   DESCRIBE check_sal;
Passing a Parameter to the Function

Remember that the function was hard-coded to check the salary of the employee with employee ID 205. The code shown in the slide removes that constraint because it is rewritten to accept the employee number as a parameter. You can now pass different employee numbers and check for the employee’s salary.

You learn more about functions in the course titled Oracle Database 11g: Develop PL/SQL Program Units.

The output of the code example in the slide is as follows:

```
DROP FUNCTION check_sal;
CREATE FUNCTION check_sal(p_empno employees.employee_id%TYPE)
RETURN Boolean IS
  v_dept_id employees.department_id%TYPE;
  v_sal     employees.salary%TYPE;
  v_avg_sal employees.salary%TYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT salary,department_id INTO v_sal,v_dept_id FROM employees
    WHERE employee_id=p_empno;
  SELECT avg(salary) INTO v_avg_sal FROM employees
    WHERE department_id=v_dept_id;
  IF v_sal > v_avg_sal THEN
      RETURN TRUE;
  ELSE
    RETURN FALSE;
  END IF;
EXCEPTION
  ...
```
Invoking the Function with a Parameter

The code in the slide invokes the function twice by passing parameters. The output of the code is as follows:

BEGIN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Checking for employee with id 205');
IF (check_sal(205) IS NULL) THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The function returned NULL due to exception');
ELSIF (check_sal(205)) THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary > average');
ELSE
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary < average');
END IF;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Checking for employee with id 70');
IF (check_sal(70) IS NULL) THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The function returned NULL due to exception');
ELSIF (check_sal(70)) THEN
...
END IF;
END;
/

Invoking the Function with a Parameter

The code in the slide invokes the function twice by passing parameters. The output of the code is as follows:

- Checking for employee with id 205
- Salary > average
- Checking for employee with id 70
- The function returned NULL due to exception
Quiz

Subprograms:
1. Are named PL/SQL blocks and can be invoked by other applications
2. Are compiled only once
3. Are stored in the database
4. Do not have to return values if they are functions
5. Can take parameters

Answer: 1, 2, 3, 5
Summary

In this lesson, you should have learned to:

• Create a simple procedure
• Invoke the procedure from an anonymous block
• Create a simple function
• Create a simple function that accepts parameters
• Invoke the function from an anonymous block

Summary

You can use anonymous blocks to design any functionality in PL/SQL. However, the major constraint with anonymous blocks is that they are not stored and, therefore, cannot be reused. Instead of creating anonymous blocks, you can create PL/SQL subprograms. Procedures and functions are called subprograms, which are named PL/SQL blocks. Subprograms express reusable logic by virtue of parameterization. The structure of a procedure or function is similar to the structure of an anonymous block. These subprograms are stored in the database and are, therefore, reusable.
Practice 9: Overview

This practice covers the following topics:

• Converting an existing anonymous block to a procedure
• Modifying the procedure to accept a parameter
• Writing an anonymous block to invoke the procedure
Appendix A
Practices and Solutions
# Table of Contents

Practices and Solutions for Lesson 1 ................................................................. 3  
Practice I-1: Accessing SQL Developer Resources ......................................... 3  
Practice I-2: Getting Started ......................................................................... 3  
Solution I-1: Accessing SQL Developer Resources .................................... 6  
Solution I-2: Getting Started ....................................................................... 7  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 1 ................................................................. 14  
  Practice 1: Introduction to PL/SQL ............................................................... 14  
  Solution 1: Introduction to PL/SQL ............................................................. 15  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 2 ................................................................. 16  
  Practice 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables .................................................. 16  
  Solution 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables .................................................. 18  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 3 ................................................................. 21  
  Practice 3: Writing Executable Statements .............................................. 21  
  Solution 3: Writing Executable Statements .............................................. 24  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 4 ................................................................. 28  
  Practice 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server ........................................ 28  
  Solution 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server ........................................ 30  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 5 ................................................................. 33  
  Practice 5: Writing Control Structures .................................................. 33  
  Solution 5: Writing Control Structures .................................................. 35  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 6 ................................................................. 38  
  Practice 6: Working with Composite Data Types .................................... 38  
  Solution 6: Working with Composite Data Types .................................... 40  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 7 ................................................................. 45  
  Practice 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors ...................................................... 45  
  Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors ...................................................... 49  
  Practice 7-2: Using Explicit Cursors – Optional ...................................... 48  
  Solution 7-2: Using Explicit Cursors – Optional ...................................... 54  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 8 ................................................................. 56  
  Practice 8-1: Handling Predefined Exceptions ....................................... 56  
  Solution 8-1: Handling Predefined Exceptions ....................................... 59  
  Practice 8-2: Handling Standard Oracle Server Exceptions .................... 58  
  Solution 8-2: Handling Standard Oracle Server Exceptions .................... 61  
Practices and Solutions for Lesson 9 ................................................................. 62  
  Practice 9: Creating and Using Stored Procedures .................................. 62  
  Solution 9: Creating and Using Stored Procedures .................................. 64
In these practices, you identify information resources for SQL Developer, execute SQL statements using SQL Developer, and examine data in the class schema. Specifically, you:

- Start SQL Developer
- Create a new database connection
- Browse the schema tables
- Set a SQL Developer preference

**Note:** All written practices use SQL Developer as the development environment. Although it is recommended that you use SQL Developer, you can also use the SQL*Plus or JDeveloper environments that are available in this course.

**Practice I-1: Accessing SQL Developer Resources**

In this practice, you navigate to the SQL Developer home page and browse helpful information on the tool.

1) Access the SQL Developer home page.
   a) Access the online SQL Developer Home Page, which is available at:
      
      
   b) Bookmark the page for easier access in future.

2) Access the SQL Developer tutorial, which is available online at http://st-curriculum.oracle.com/tutorial/SQLDeveloper/index.htm. Then review the following sections and associated demonstrations:
   a) What to Do First
   b) Working with Database Objects
   c) Accessing Data

**Practice I-2: Getting Started**

1) Start SQL Developer.

2) Create a database connection by using the following information (Hint: Select the Save Password check box):
   a) Connection Name: MyConnection
   b) Username: ora41
   c) Password: ora41
   d) Hostname: localhost
   e) Port: 1521
Practice I-2: Getting Started (continued)

f) SID: orcl

3) Test the new connection. If the Status is Success, connect to the database using this new connection.
   a) In the Database Connection window, click the Test button.
      **Note:** The connection status appears in the lower-left corner of the window.
   b) If the status is Success, click the Connect button.

4) Browse the structure of the EMPLOYEES table and display its data.
   a) Expand the MyConnection connection by clicking the plus symbol next to it.
   b) Expand the Tables icon by clicking the plus symbol next to it.
   c) Display the structure of the EMPLOYEES table.

5) Use the EMPLOYEES tab to view data in the EMPLOYEES table.

6) Use the SQL Worksheet to select the last names and salaries of all employees whose annual salary is greater than $10,000. Use both the Execute Statement (F9) and the Run Script (F5) icons to execute the SELECT statement. Review the results of both methods of executing the SELECT statements on the appropriate tabs.
   **Note:** Take a few minutes to familiarize yourself with the data, or consult Appendix B, which provides the description and data for all the tables in the HR schema that you will use in this course.

7) From the SQL Developer menu, select Tools > Preferences. The Preferences window appears.

8) Select Database > Worksheet Parameters. In the “Select default path to look for scripts” text box, use the Browse button to select the /home/oracle/labs/plsf folder. This folder contains the code example scripts, lab scripts, and practice solution scripts that are used in this course. Then, in the Preferences window, click OK to save the Worksheet Parameter setting.

9) Familiarize yourself with the structure of the /home/oracle/labs/plsf folder.
   a) Select File > Open. The Open window automatically selects the .../plsf folder as your starting location. This folder contains three subfolders:
      - The /code_ex folder contains the code examples found in the course materials. Each .sql script is associated with a particular page in the lesson.
      - The /labs folder contains the code that is used in certain lesson practices. You are instructed to run the required script in the appropriate practice.
      - The /soln folder contains the solutions for each practice. Each .sql script is numbered with the associated practice_exercise reference.
Practice I-2: Getting Started (continued)

b) You can also use the Files tab to navigate through folders to open the script files.
c) Using the Open window, and the Files tab, navigate through the folders and open a script file without executing the code.
d) Close the SQL Worksheet.
Solution I-1: Accessing SQL Developer Resources

1) Access the SQL Developer home page.
   a) Access the online SQL Developer Home Page, which is available at:
      
      The SQL Developer home page is displayed as follows:

      ![SQL Developer Home Page Screenshot]

      b) Bookmark the page for easier access in future.

2) Access the SQL Developer tutorial, which is available online at http://st-curriculum.oracle.com/tutorial/SQLDeveloper/index.htm. Then review the following sections and associated demos:
   a) What to Do First
   b) Working with Database Objects
   c) Accessing Data
Solution I-2: Getting Started

1) Start SQL Developer.
   Click the SQL Developer icon on your desktop.

2) Create a database connection by using the following information (Hint: Select the Save Password check box):
   a) Connection Name: MyConnection
   b) Username: ora41
   c) Password: ora41
   d) Hostname: localhost
   e) Port: 1521
   f) SID: orcl

Right-click the Connections node on the Connections tabbed page and select New Database Connection from the shortcut menu. Result: The New/Select Database Connection window appears.

Use the preceding information to create the new database connection. In addition, select the Save Password check box. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection Name</th>
<th>MyConnection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>ora41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>*****</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Password</td>
<td>✅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Type</td>
<td>Basic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostname</td>
<td>localhost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>1521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SID</td>
<td>orcl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Solution I-2: Getting Started (continued)

3) Test the new connection. If the Status is Success, connect to the database using this new connection.
   a) In the Database Connection window, click the Test button.
      
      **Note:** The connection status appears in the lower-left corner of the window.
   b) If the status is Success, click the Connect button.

   ![Database Connection Window](image)

   **Note:** To display the properties of an existing connection, right-click the connection name on the Connections tab and select Properties from the shortcut menu.

4) Browse the structure of the EMPLOYEES table and display its data.
   a) Expand the MyConnection connection by clicking the plus symbol next to it.
   b) Expand Tables by clicking the plus symbol next to it.
   c) Display the structure of the EMPLOYEES table.

   Drill down on the EMPLOYEES table by clicking the plus symbol next to it.
   Click the EMPLOYEES table.

   Result: The Columns tab displays the columns in the EMPLOYEES table as follows:
5) Use the EMPLOYEES tab to view the data in the EMPLOYEES table.

To display employees’ data, click the Data tab.

Result: The EMPLOYEES table data is displayed as follows:
Solution I-2: Getting Started (continued)

6) Use the SQL Worksheet to select the last names and salaries of all employees whose annual salary is greater than $10,000. Use both the Execute Statement (F9) and Run Script (F5) icons to execute the SELECT statement. Review the results of both methods of executing the SELECT statements on the appropriate tabs.

**Note:** Take a few minutes to familiarize yourself with the data, or consult Appendix B, which provides the description and data for all the tables in the HR schema that you will use in this course.

To display the SQL Worksheet, click the MyConnection tab.

**Note:** This tab was opened previously when you drilled down on your database connection.

Enter the appropriate SELECT statement. Press F9 to execute the query and F5 to execute the query using the Run Script method.

For example, when you press F9, the results appear similar to the following:

```
select last_name, salary
from employees
where salary > 10000;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LAST_NAME</th>
<th>SALARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kriy</td>
<td>24000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kochhar</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Haan</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenberg</td>
<td>12000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raphaely</td>
<td>11000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russell</td>
<td>14000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partners</td>
<td>13500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7) From the SQL Developer menu, select Tools > Preferences. The Preferences window appears.

8) Select Database > Worksheet Parameters. In the “Select default path to look for scripts” text box, use the Browse button to select the `/home/oracle/labs/plsf` folder.

This folder contains the code example scripts, lab scripts, and practice solution scripts that are used in this course.

Click Open to select the folder.
Solution I-2: Getting Started (continued)

Then, in the Preferences window, click OK to save the Worksheet Parameter setting.

9) Familiarize yourself with the structure of the `/home/oracle/labs/plsf` folder.
   a) Select File > Open. The Open window automatically selects the `.../plsf` folder as your starting location. This folder contains three subfolders:

- The `/code_ex` folder contains the code examples found in the course materials. Each `.sql` script is associated with a particular page in the lesson.
- The `/labs` folder contains the code that is used in certain lesson practices. You are instructed to run the required script in the appropriate practice.
Solution I-2: Getting Started (continued)

- The /soln folder contains the solutions for each practice. Each .sql script is numbered with the associated practice_exercise reference.

b) You can also use the Files tab to navigate through folders to open script files.

c) Using the Open window, and the Files tab, navigate through the folders and open a script file without executing the code.

d) Close the SQL Worksheet.

To close any SQL Worksheet tab, click X on the tab, as shown here:
The /home/oracle/labs folder is the working directory where you save the scripts that you create.
The solutions for all the practices are in the /home/oracle/labs/plsf/soln folder.

**Practice 1: Introduction to PL/SQL**

1) Which of the following PL/SQL blocks execute successfully?

   a) BEGIN
      END;

   b) DECLARE
      v_amount INTEGER(10);
      END;

   c) DECLARE
      BEGIN
      END;

   d) DECLARE
      v_amount INTEGER(10);
      BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(amount);
      END;

2) Create and execute a simple anonymous block that outputs “Hello World.” Execute and save this script as lab_01_02_soln.sql.
**Solution 1: Introduction to PL/SQL**

1) Which of the following PL/SQL blocks execute successfully?

   a) `BEGIN
       END;`

   b) `DECLARE
       v_amount  INTEGER(10);
       END;`

   c) `DECLARE
       BEGIN
       END;`

   d) `DECLARE
       v_amount  INTEGER(10);
       BEGIN
       DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(amount);
       END;`

   The block in a does not execute. It has no executable statements.
   The block in b does not have the mandatory executable section that starts with
   the BEGIN keyword.
   The block in c has all the necessary parts, but no executable statements.
   The block in d executes successfully.

2) Create and execute a simple anonymous block that outputs “Hello World.” Execute
   and save this script as `lab_01_02_soln.sql`.

   Enter the following code in the workspace, and then press F5.

   ```sql
   SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
   BEGIN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hello World');
   END;
   ```

   You should see the following output on the Script Output tab:

   ![Script Output](image)

   Click the Save button. Select the folder in which you want to save the file. Enter
   `lab_01_02_soln.sql` as the file name and click Save.
Practice 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables

In this practice, you declare PL/SQL variables.

1) Identify valid and invalid identifiers:
   a) today
   b) last_name
   c) today’s_date
   d) Number_of_days_in_February_this_year
   e) Isleap$year
   f) #number
   g) NUMBER#
   h) number1to7

2) Identify valid and invalid variable declaration and initialization:
   a) number_of_copies PLS_INTEGER;
   b) PRINTER_NAME constant VARCHAR2(10);
   c) deliver_to VARCHAR2(10):=Johnson;
   d) by_when DATE:= CURRENT_DATE+1;

3) Examine the following anonymous block, and then select a statement from the following that is true.

```plsql
DECLARE
  v_fname VARCHAR2(20);
  v_lname VARCHAR2(15) DEFAULT 'fernandez';
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_fname || ' ' || v_lname);
END;
```

a) The block executes successfully and prints “fernandez.”
b) The block produces an error because the fname variable is used without initializing.
c) The block executes successfully and prints “null fernandez.”
d) The block produces an error because you cannot use the DEFAULT keyword to initialize a variable of type VARCHAR2.
e) The block produces an error because the v_fname variable is not declared.
**Practice 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables (continued)**

4) Modify an existing anonymous block and save it as a new script.
   
a) Open the lab_01_02_soln.sql script, which you created in Practice 1.
   
b) In this PL/SQL block, declare the following variables:
   
   1. `v_today` of type DATE. Initialize today with SYSDATE.
   2. `v_tomorrow` of type `today`. Use the `%TYPE` attribute to declare this variable.
   
c) In the executable section:
   
   1. Initialize the `v_tomorrow` variable with an expression, which calculates tomorrow’s date (add one to the value in today).
   2. Print the value of `v_today` and `tomorrow` after printing “Hello World”
   
d) Save your script as `lab_02_04_soln.sql`, and then execute.
   
The sample output is as follows (the values of `v_today` and `v_tomorrow` will be different to reflect your current today’s and tomorrow’s date):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>anonymous block completed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hello World</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TODAY IS : 05-JUN-09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOMORROW IS : 06-JUN-09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5) Edit the `lab_02_04_soln.sql` script.
   
a) Add code to create two bind variables, named `b_basic_percent` and `b_pf_percent`. Both bind variables are of type NUMBER.
   
b) In the executable section of the PL/SQL block, assign the values 45 and 12 to `b_basic_percent` and `b_pf_percent`, respectively.
   
c) Terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and display the value of the bind variables by using the `PRINT` command.
   
d) Execute and save your script as `lab_02_05_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>anonymous block completed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b_basic_percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b_pf_percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Solution 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables

1) Identify valid and invalid identifiers:
   a) today  Valid
   b) last_name  Valid
   c) today’s_date  Invalid – character “’” not allowed
   d) Number_of_days_in_February_this_year  Invalid – Too long
   e) Isleap$year  Valid
   f) #number  Invalid – Cannot start with “#”
   g) NUMBER#  Valid
   h) number1to7  Valid

2) Identify valid and invalid variable declaration and initialization:
   a) number_of_copies  PLS_INTEGER;  Valid
   b) PRINTER_NAME  constant VARCHAR2(10);  Invalid
   c) deliver_to  VARCHAR2(10):=Johnson;  Invalid
   d) by_when  DATE:=CURRENT_DATE+1;  Valid

   The declaration in b is invalid because constant variables must be initialized during declaration.

   The declaration in c is invalid because string literals should be enclosed within single quotation marks.

3) Examine the following anonymous block, and then select a statement from the following that is true.

   DECLARE
   v_fname VARCHAR2(20);
   v_lname VARCHAR2(15) DEFAULT 'fernandez';
   BEGIN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_fname || ' ' || v_lname);
   END;

   a) The block executes successfully and prints “fernandez.”
   b) The block produces an error because the f_name variable is used without initializing.
   c) The block executes successfully and prints “null fernandez.”
   d) The block produces an error because you cannot use the DEFAULT keyword to initialize a variable of type VARCHAR2.
   e) The block produces an error because the v_fname variable is not declared.

   a. The block will execute successfully and print “fernandez.”
Solution 2: Declaring PL/SQL Variables (continued)

4) Modify an existing anonymous block and save it as a new script.

   a) Open the lab_01_02_soln.sql script, which you created in Practice 1.

   b) In the PL/SQL block, declare the following variables:

      1. Variable `v_today` of type DATE. Initialize today with SYSDATE.

         ```plsql
         DECLARE
             v_today DATE := SYSDATE;
         END;
         ```

      2. Variable `v_tomorrow` of type today. Use the `%TYPE` attribute to declare this variable.

         ```plsql
         v_tomorrow v_today%TYPE;
         ```

c) In the executable section:

   1. Initialize the `v_tomorrow` variable with an expression, which calculates tomorrow’s date (add one to the value in `v_today`)

   2. Print the value of `v_today` and `v_tomorrow` after printing “Hello World”

         ```plsql
         BEGIN
             v_tomorrow := v_today + 1;
             DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Hello World ');
             DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('TODAY IS : || v_today);
             DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('TOMORROW IS : || v_tomorrow);
         END;
         ```

d) Save your script as lab_02_04_soln.sql, and then execute.

   The sample output is as follows (the values of `v_today` and `v_tomorrow` will be different to reflect your current today’s and tomorrow’s date):

   anonymous block completed
   Hello World
   TODAY IS : 05-JUN-09
   TOMORROW IS : 06-JUN-09
5) Edit the lab_02_04_soln.sql script.
   a) Add the code to create two bind variables, named b_basic_percent and b_pf_percent. Both bind variables are of type NUMBER.

```sql
VARIABLE b_basic_percent NUMBER
VARIABLE b_pf_percent NUMBER
```

b) In the executable section of the PL/SQL block, assign the values 45 and 12 to b_basic_percent and b_pf_percent, respectively.

```sql
:b_basic_percent:=45;
:b_pf_percent:=12;
```

c) Terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and display the value of the bind variables by using the PRINT command.

```sql
/ PRINT b_basic_percent
PRINT b_pf_percent
```

OR

```sql
PRINT
```

d) Execute and save your script as lab_02_05_soln.sql. The sample output is as follows:

```sql
anonymous block completed
-- b_basic_percent
-- 45
-- b_pf_percent
-- 12
```
Practice 3: Writing Executable Statements

In this practice, you examine and write executable statements.

```sql
DECLARE
    v_weight     NUMBER(3) := 600;
    v_message    VARCHAR2(255) := 'Product 10012';
BEGIN
    DECLARE
        v_weight     NUMBER(3) := 1;
        v_message    VARCHAR2(255) := 'Product 11001';
        v_new_locn   VARCHAR2(50) := 'Europe';
    BEGIN
        v_weight := v_weight + 1;
        v_new_locn := 'Western ' || v_new_locn;
        v_weight := v_weight + 1;
        v_message := v_message || ' is in stock';
        v_new_locn := 'Western ' || v_new_locn;
    END;
END;
/
```

1) Evaluate the preceding PL/SQL block and determine the data type and value of each of the following variables, according to the rules of scoping.

a) The value of `v_weight` at position 1 is:

b) The value of `v_new_locn` at position 1 is:

c) The value of `v_weight` at position 2 is:

d) The value of `v_message` at position 2 is:

e) The value of `v_new_locn` at position 2 is:
2) In the preceding PL/SQL block, determine the values and data types for each of the following cases:

   a) The value of v_customer in the nested block is:
   b) The value of v_name in the nested block is:
   c) The value of v.credit_rating in the nested block is:
   d) The value of v_customer in the main block is:
   e) The value of v_name in the main block is:
   f) The value of v.credit_rating in the main block is:

3) Use the same session that you used to execute the practices in the lesson titled “Declaring PL/SQL Variables.” If you have opened a new session, execute lab_02_05_soln.sql. Then, edit lab_02_05_soln.sql as follows:

   a) Use single-line comment syntax to comment the lines that create the bind variables, and turn on SERVEROUTPUT.
   b) Use multiple-line comments in the executable section to comment the lines that assign values to the bind variables.
   c) In the declaration section:
      1. Declare and initialize two temporary variables to replace the commented out bind variables
      2. Declare two additional variables: v.fname of type VARCHAR2 and size 15, and v.emp_sal of type NUMBER and size 10
**Practice 3: Writing Executable Statements (continued)**

d) Include the following SQL statement in the executable section:

```sql
SELECT first_name, salary INTO v_fname, v_emp_sal
FROM employees WHERE employee_id=110;
```

e) Change the line that prints “Hello World” to print “Hello” and the first name. Then, comment the lines that display the dates and print the bind variables.

f) Calculate the contribution of the employee towards provident fund (PF). PF is 12% of the basic salary, and the basic salary is 45% of the salary. Use local variables for the calculation. Try to use only one expression to calculate the PF. Print the employee’s salary and his or her contribution toward PF.

g) Execute and save your script as `lab_03_03_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Hello John
YOUR SALARY IS : 8200
YOUR CONTRIBUTION TOWARDS PF: 442.8
```
Solution 3: Writing Executable Statements

In this practice, you examine and write executable statements.

```sql
DECLARE
  v_weight NUMBER(3) := 600;
  v_message VARCHAR2(255) := 'Product 10012';
BEGIN
  DECLARE
    v_weight NUMBER(3) := 1;
    v_message VARCHAR2(255) := 'Product 11001';
    v_new_locn VARCHAR2(50) := 'Europe';
  BEGIN
    v_weight := v_weight + 1;
    v_new_locn := 'Western ' || v_new_locn;
  END;
  v_weight := v_weight + 1;
  v_message := v_message || ' is in stock';
  v_new_locn := 'Western ' || v_new_locn;
END;
/
```

1) Evaluate the preceding PL/SQL block and determine the data type and value of each of the following variables, according to the rules of scoping.

a) The value of v_weight at position 1 is:
   2
   The data type is NUMBER.

b) The value of v_new_locn at position 1 is:
   Western Europe
   The data type is VARCHAR2.

c) The value of v_weight at position 2 is:
   601
   The data type is NUMBER.

d) The value of v_message at position 2 is:
   Product 10012 is in stock
   The data type is VARCHAR2.

e) The value of v_new_locn at position 2 is:
   Illegal because v_new_locn is not visible outside the subblock
Solution 3: Writing Executable Statements (continued)

```
DECLARE
  v_customer  VARCHAR2(50) := 'Womansport';
  v_credit_rating  VARCHAR2(50) := 'EXCELLENT';
BEGIN
  DECLARE
    v_customer  NUMBER(7) := 201;
    v_name VARCHAR2(25) := 'Unisports';
BEGIN
    v_credit_rating := 'GOOD';
    ...
    END;
  ...
END;
```

2) In the preceding PL/SQL block, determine the values and data types for each of the following cases:

   a) The value of `v_customer` in the nested block is:
      201
      The data type is NUMBER.

   b) The value of `v_name` in the nested block is:
      Unisports
      The data type is VARCHAR2.

   c) The value of `v_credit_rating` in the nested block is:
      GOOD
      The data type is VARCHAR2.

   d) The value of `v_customer` in the main block is:
      Womansport
      The data type is VARCHAR2.

   e) The value of `v_name` in the main block is:
      Null. `name` is not visible in the main block and you would see an error.

   f) The value of `v_credit_rating` in the main block is:
      EXCELLENT
      The data type is VARCHAR2.

3) Use the same session that you used to execute the practices in the lesson titled “Declaring PL/SQL Variables.” If you have opened a new session, execute `lab_02_05_soln.sql`. Then, edit `lab_02_05_soln.sql` as follows:

   a) Use single-line comment syntax to comment the lines that create the bind variables, and turn on SERVEROUTPUT.

```
-- VARIABLE b_basic_percent NUMBER
-- VARIABLE b_pf_percent NUMBER
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
```
Solution 3: Writing Executable Statements (continued)

b) Use multiple-line comments in the executable section to comment the lines that assign values to the bind variables.

```sql
/*:b_basic_percent:=45;
 :b_pf_percent:=12;/*
```

c) In the declaration section:
1. Declare and initialize two temporary variables to replace the commented out bind variables.
2. Declare two additional variables: v_fname of type VARCHAR2 and size 15, and v_emp_sal of type NUMBER and size 10

```sql
DECLARE
    v_basic_percent NUMBER:=45;
    v_pf_percent NUMBER:=12;
    v_fname VARCHAR2(15);
    v_emp_sal NUMBER(10);
END;
```

d) Include the following SQL statement in the executable section:

```sql
SELECT first_name, salary INTO v_fname, v_emp_sal
    FROM employees WHERE employee_id=110;
```

e) Change the line that prints “Hello World” to print “Hello” and the first name. Then, comment the lines that display the dates and print the bind variables.

```sql
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Hello ' || v_fname);
/* DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('TODAY IS : ' || v_today);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('TOMORROW IS : ' || v_tomorrow);*/
...  
...  
/
--PRINT b_basic_percent
--PRINT b_pf_percent
```

f) Calculate the contribution of the employee towards provident fund (PF). PF is 12% of the basic salary, and the basic salary is 45% of the salary. Use local variables for the calculation. Try to use only one expression to calculate the PF. Print the employee’s salary and his or her contribution toward PF.

```sql
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('YOUR SALARY IS : ' || v_emp_sal);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('YOUR CONTRIBUTION TOWARDS PF:
    ' || v_emp_sal*v_basic_percent/100*v_pf_percent/100);
END;
```
**Solution 3: Writing Executable Statements (continued)**

g) Execute and save your script as `lab_03_03_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Hello John
YOUR SALARY IS : 8200
YOUR CONTRIBUTION TOWARDS PF: 442.8
```
### Practice 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server

In this practice, you use PL/SQL code to interact with the Oracle Server.

1) Create a PL/SQL block that selects the maximum department ID in the `departments` table and stores it in the `v_max_deptno` variable. Display the maximum department ID.

   a) Declare a variable `v_max_deptno` of type `NUMBER` in the declarative section.

   b) Start the executable section with the `BEGIN` keyword and include a `SELECT` statement to retrieve the maximum `department_id` from the `departments` table.

   c) Display `v_max_deptno` and end the executable block.

   d) Execute and save your script as `lab_04_01_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:

   ```
   anonymous block completed
   The maximum department_id is : 270
   ```

2) Modify the PL/SQL block that you created in step 1 to insert a new department into the `departments` table.

   a) Load the `lab_04_01_soln.sql` script. Declare two variables:

      ```
      v_dept_name of type departments.department_name and
      v_dept_id of type NUMBER
      ```

      Assign 'Education' to `v_dept_name` in the declarative section.

   b) You have already retrieved the current maximum department number from the `departments` table. Add 10 to it and assign the result to `v_dept_id`.

   c) Include an `INSERT` statement to insert data into the `department_name`, `department_id`, and `location_id` columns of the `departments` table. Use values in `dept_name` and `dept_id` for `department_name` and `department_id`, respectively, and use `NULL` for `location_id`.

   d) Use the SQL attribute `SQL%ROWCOUNT` to display the number of rows that are affected.

   e) Execute a `SELECT` statement to check whether the new department is inserted. You can terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and include the `SELECT` statement in your script.

   f) Execute and save your script as `lab_04_02_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:
3) In step 2, you set location_id to NULL. Create a PL/SQL block that updates the location_id to 3000 for the new department.

**Note:** If you successfully completed step 2, continue with step 3a. If not, first execute the solution script `/soln/soln_04_02.sql`.

a) Start the executable block with the `BEGIN` keyword. Include the `UPDATE` statement to set the location_id to 3000 for the new department (`dept_id = 280`).

b) End the executable block with the `END` keyword. Terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and include a `SELECT` statement to display the department that you updated.

c) Include a `DELETE` statement to delete the department that you added.

d) Execute and save your script as `lab_04_03_soln.sql`. The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
The maximum department_id is 270
SQL> ROWCOUNT gives 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTMENT_ID</th>
<th>DEPARTMENT_NAME</th>
<th>MANAGER_ID</th>
<th>LOCATION_ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>280</td>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 rows selected
```

```sql
3000
```

```sql
1 rows deleted
```
Solution 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server

In this practice, you use PL/SQL code to interact with the Oracle Server.

1) Create a PL/SQL block that selects the maximum department ID in the departments table and stores it in the v_max_deptno variable. Display the maximum department ID.

   a) Declare a variable v_max_deptno of type NUMBER in the declarative section.

      DECLARE
         v_max_deptno NUMBER;
      END;

   b) Start the executable section with the BEGIN keyword and include a SELECT statement to retrieve the maximum department_id from the departments table.

      BEGIN
         SELECT MAX(department_id) INTO v_max_deptno FROM departments;
      END;

   c) Display v_max_deptno and end the executable block.

      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The maximum department_id is : ' || v_max_deptno);
      END;

   d) Execute and save your script as lab_04_01_soln.sql. The sample output is as follows:

      anonymous block completed
      The maximum department_id is : 270

2) Modify the PL/SQL block that you created in step 1 to insert a new department into the departments table.

   a) Load the lab_04_01_soln.sql script. Declare two variables:
      v_dept_name of type departments.department_name and
      v_dept_id of type NUMBER
      Assign ‘Education’ to v_dept_name in the declarative section.

      v_dept_name departments.department_name%TYPE := 'Education';
      v_dept_id NUMBER;
Solution 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server (continued)

b) You have already retrieved the current maximum department number from the departments table. Add 10 to it and assign the result to \texttt{v_dept_id}.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{v_dept_id := 10 + v_max_deptno;}
\end{verbatim}

c) Include an INSERT statement to insert data into the department\_name, department\_id, and location\_id columns of the departments table. Use values in dept\_name and dept\_id for department\_name and department\_id, respectively, and use NULL for location\_id.

\begin{verbatim}
... 
INSERT INTO departments (department\_id, department\_name, location\_id) 
VALUES (v_dept_id, v_dept\_name, NULL);
... 
\end{verbatim}

d) Use the SQL attribute SQL\%ROWCOUNT to display the number of rows that are affected.

\begin{verbatim}
DBMS\_OUTPUT\_PUT\_LINE (' SQL\%ROWCOUNT gives ' || SQL\%ROWCOUNT);
... 
\end{verbatim}

e) Execute a SELECT statement to check whether the new department is inserted. You can terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and include the SELECT statement in your script.

\begin{verbatim}
/
SELECT * FROM departments WHERE department\_id= 280;
... 
\end{verbatim}

f) Execute and save your script as \texttt{lab\_04\_02\_soln.sql}. The sample output is as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
amazon block completed
The maximum department\_id is : 270
SQL\%ROWCOUNT gives 1

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|l|}
\hline
DEPARTMENT\_ID & DEPARTMENT\_NAME & MANAGER\_ID & LOCATION\_ID \\
\hline
280 & Education & & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
1 rows selected
\end{verbatim}
Solution 4: Interacting with the Oracle Server (continued)

3) In step 2, you set location_id to NULL. Create a PL/SQL block that updates the location_id to 3000 for the new department. 
   **Note:** If you successfully completed step 2, continue with step 3a. If not, first execute the solution script /soln/sol_04_02.sql.

   a) Start the executable block with the BEGIN keyword. Include the UPDATE statement to set location_id to 3000 for the new department (dept_id =280).

   ```plsql
   BEGIN
   UPDATE departments SET location_id=3000 WHERE department_id=280;
   END;
   /
   SELECT * FROM departments WHERE department_id=280;
   ``

   b) End the executable block with the END keyword. Terminate the PL/SQL block with “/” and include a SELECT statement to display the department that you updated.

   ```plsql
   DELETE FROM departments WHERE department_id=280;
   ``

   c) Include a DELETE statement to delete the department that you added.

   ```plsql
   SELECT * FROM departments WHERE department_id=280;
   ``

   d) Execute and save your script as lab_04_03_soln.sql. The sample output is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTMENT_ID</th>
<th>DEPARTMENT_NAME</th>
<th>MANAGER_ID</th>
<th>LOCATION_ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>280</td>
<td>Education</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   1 rows selected
   1 rows deleted
Practice 5: Writing Control Structures

In this practice, you create PL/SQL blocks that incorporate loops and conditional control structures. This practice tests your understanding of various IF statements and LOOP constructs.

1) Execute the command in the \texttt{lab\_05\_01.sql} file to create the \texttt{messages} table. Write a PL/SQL block to insert numbers into the \texttt{messages} table.

   a) Insert the numbers 1 through 10, excluding 6 and 8.
   b) Commit before the end of the block.
   c) Execute a SELECT statement to verify that your PL/SQL block worked.

Result: You should see the following output:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Script Output</th>
<th>Explain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anonymous block completed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESULTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 rows selected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

2) Execute the \texttt{lab\_05\_02.sql} script. This script creates an \texttt{emp} table that is a replica of the \texttt{employees} table. It alters the \texttt{emp} table to add a new column, \texttt{stars}, of VARCHAR2 data type and size 50. Create a PL/SQL block that inserts an asterisk in the \texttt{stars} column for every $1000 of an employee’s salary. Save your script as \texttt{lab\_05\_02_soln.sql}.

   a) In the declarative section of the block, declare a variable \texttt{v\_empno} of type \texttt{emp\_employee\_id} and initialize it to 176. Declare a variable \texttt{v\_asterisk} of type \texttt{emp\_stars} and initialize it to NULL. Create a variable \texttt{v\_sal} of type \texttt{emp\_salary}.

   b) In the executable section, write logic to append an asterisk (*) to the string for every $1,000 of the salary. For example, if the employee earns $8,000, the string
Practice 5: Writing Control Structures (continued)

of asterisks should contain eight asterisks. If the employee earns $12,500, the string of asterisks should contain 13 asterisks.

c) Update the stars column for the employee with the string of asterisks. Commit before the end of the block.

d) Display the row from the emp table to verify whether your PL/SQL block has executed successfully.

e) Execute and save your script as lab_05_02_soln.sql. The output is as follows:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>anonymous block completed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMPLOYEE_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 rows selected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Solution 5: Writing Control Structures

1) Execute the command in the `lab_05_01.sql` file to create the `messages` table. Write a PL/SQL block to insert numbers into the `messages` table.

a) Insert the numbers 1 through 10, excluding 6 and 8.

b) Commit before the end of the block.

```plsql
BEGIN
FOR i in 1..10 LOOP
  IF i = 6 or i = 8 THEN
    null;
  ELSE
    INSERT INTO messages(results)
    VALUES (i);
  END IF;
END LOOP;
COMMIT;
END;
/
```

c) Execute a `SELECT` statement to verify that your PL/SQL block worked.

```sql
SELECT * FROM messages;
```

Result: You should see the following output:

```
anonymous block completed
RESULTS

1
2
3
4
5
7
9
10
8 rows selected
```
2) Execute the lab_05_02.sql script. This script creates an emp table that is a replica of the employees table. It alters the emp table to add a new column, stars, of VARCHAR2 data type and size 50. Create a PL/SQL block that inserts an asterisk in the stars column for every $1000 of the employee’s salary. Save your script as lab_05_02_soln.sql.

a) In the declarative section of the block, declare a variable v_empno of type emp.employee_id and initialize it to 176. Declare a variable v_asterisk of type emp.stars and initialize it to NULL. Create a variable v_sal of type emp.salary.

```sql
DECLARE
    v_empno   emp.employee_id%TYPE := 176;
    v_asterisk emp.stars%TYPE := NULL;
    v_sal     emp.salary%TYPE;
```

b) In the executable section, write logic to append an asterisk (*) to the string for every $1,000 of the salary. For example, if the employee earns $8,000, the string of asterisks should contain eight asterisks. If the employee earns $12,500, the string of asterisks should contain 13 asterisks.

```sql
BEGIN
    SELECT NVL(ROUND(salary/1000), 0) INTO v_sal
    FROM emp WHERE employee_id = v_empno;

    FOR i IN 1..v_sal
        LOOP
            v_asterisk := v_asterisk || ' '*;
        END LOOP;
END;
```

c) Update the stars column for the employee with the string of asterisks. Commit before the end of the block.

```sql
UPDATE emp SET stars = v_asterisk
WHERE employee_id = v_empno;
COMMIT;
END;
/
```

d) Display the row from the emp table to verify whether your PL/SQL block has executed successfully.

```sql
SELECT employee_id, salary, stars
FROM emp WHERE employee_id =176;
```
**Solution 5: Writing Control Structures (continued)**

e) Execute and save your script as `lab_05_02_soln.sql`. The output is as follows:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EMPLOYEE_ID</th>
<th>SALARY</th>
<th>STARS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>8600</td>
<td>*********</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 rows selected
```
Practice 6: Working with Composite Data Types

1) Write a PL/SQL block to print information about a given country.
   a) Declare a PL/SQL record based on the structure of the countries table.
   b) Declare a variable v_countryid. Assign CA to v_countryid.
   c) In the declarative section, use the %ROWTYPE attribute and declare the
      v_country_record variable of type countries.
   d) In the executable section, get all the information from the countries table by
      using v_countryid. Display selected information about the country. The
      sample output is as follows:

      anonymous block completed
      Country Id: CA Country Name: Canada Region: 2

   e) You may want to execute and test the PL/SQL block for countries with the IDs
      DE, UK, and US.

2) Create a PL/SQL block to retrieve the names of some departments from the
   departments table and print each department name on the screen, incorporating an
   associative array. Save the script as lab_06_02_soln.sql.
   a) Declare an INDEX BY table dept_table_type of type
      departments.department_name. Declare a variable my_dept_table
      of type dept_table_type to temporarily store the names of the departments.
   b) Declare two variables: f_loop_count and v_deptno of type NUMBER.
      Assign 10 to f_loop_count and 0 to v_deptno.
   c) Using a loop, retrieve the names of 10 departments and store the names in the
      associative array. Start with department_id 10. Increase v_deptno by 10
      for every loop iteration. The following table shows the department_id for
      which you should retrieve the department_name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTMENT_ID</th>
<th>DEPARTMENT_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Shipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>IT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Public Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Executive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Finance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice 6: Working with Composite Data Types (continued)

d) Using another loop, retrieve the department names from the associative array and display them.

e) Execute and save your script as lab_06_02_soln.sql. The output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Administration
Marketing
Purchasing
Human Resources
Shipping
IT
Public Relations
Sales
Executive
Finance
```

3) Modify the block that you created in Practice 2 to retrieve all information about each department from the departments table and display the information. Use an associative array with the INDEX BY table of records method.

a) Load the lab_06_02_soln.sql script.

b) You have declared the associative array to be of type departments.department_name. Modify the declaration of the associative array to temporarily store the number, name, and location of all the departments. Use the %ROWTYPE attribute.

c) Modify the SELECT statement to retrieve all department information currently in the departments table and store it in the associative array.

d) Using another loop, retrieve the department information from the associative array and display the information.

The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Department Number: 10 Department Name: Administration Manager Id: 200 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 20 Department Name: Marketing Manager Id: 201 Location Id: 1800
Department Number: 30 Department Name: Purchasing Manager Id: 114 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 40 Department Name: Human Resources Manager Id: 203 Location Id: 2400
Department Number: 50 Department Name: Shipping Manager Id: 121 Location Id: 1500
Department Number: 60 Department Name: IT Manager Id: 103 Location Id: 1400
Department Number: 70 Department Name: Public Relations Manager Id: 204 Location Id: 2700
Department Number: 80 Department Name: Sales Manager Id: 145 Location Id: 2500
Department Number: 90 Department Name: Executive Manager Id: 100 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 100 Department Name: Finance Manager Id: 108 Location Id: 1700
```
Solution 6: Working with Composite Data Types

1) Write a PL/SQL block to print information about a given country.
   a) Declare a PL/SQL record based on the structure of the countries table.
   b) Declare a variable v_countryid. Assign CA to v_countryid.

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SET VERIFY OFF
DECLARE
    v_countryid varchar2(20) := 'CA';
```

c) In the declarative section, use the %ROWTYPE attribute and declare the
   v_country_record variable of type countries.

```
v_country_record countries%ROWTYPE;
```

d) In the executable section, get all the information from the countries table by
   using v_countryid. Display selected information about the country. The
   sample output is as follows:

```
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO v_country_record FROM countries
    WHERE country_id = UPPER(v_countryid);

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Country Id: ' || v_country_record.country_id ||
        'Country Name: ' || v_country_record.country_name ||
        'Region: ' || v_country_record.region_id);
END;
```

```
anonymous block completed
Country Id: CA Country Name: Canada Region: 2
```

e) You may want to execute and test the PL/SQL block for countries with the IDs
   DE, UK, and US.
Solution 6: Working with Composite Data Types (continued)

2) Create a PL/SQL block to retrieve the names of some departments from the departments table and print each department name on the screen, incorporating an associative array. Save the script as lab_06_02_soln.sql.

a) Declare an INDEX BY table dept_table_type of type departments.department_name. Declare a variable my_dept_table of type dept_table_type to temporarily store the names of the departments.

```sql
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
    TYPE dept_table_type is table of departments.department_name%TYPE;
    INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
    my_dept_table dept_table_type;

b) Declare two variables: f_loop_count and v_deptno of type NUMBER. Assign 10 to f_loop_count and 0 to v_deptno.

    loop_count NUMBER (2):=10;
    deptno NUMBER (4):=0;

c) Using a loop, retrieve the names of 10 departments and store the names in the associative array. Start with department_id 10. Increase v_deptno by 10 for every iteration of the loop. The following table shows the department_id for which you should retrieve the department_name and store in the associative array.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTMENT_ID</th>
<th>DEPARTMENT_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Shipping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>IT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Public Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Executive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Finance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Solution 6: Working with Composite Data Types (continued)**

```
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 1..f_loop_count
    LOOP
      v_deptno:=v_deptno+10;
      SELECT department_name
      INTO my_dept_table(i)
      FROM departments
      WHERE department_id = v_deptno;
    END LOOP;
END;
```

d) Using another loop, retrieve the department names from the associative array and display them.

```
FOR i IN 1..f_loop_count
  LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (my_dept_table(i));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

e) Execute and save your script as `lab_06_02_soln.sql`. The output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Administration
Marketing
Purchasing
Human Resources
Shipping
IT
Public Relations
Sales
Executive
Finance
```

3) Modify the block that you created in Practice 2 to retrieve all information about each department from the `departments` table and display the information. Use an associative array with the `INDEX BY` table of records method.

a) Load the `lab_06_02_soln.sql` script.

b) You have declared the associative array to be of the `departments.department_name` type. Modify the declaration of the associative array to temporarily store the number, name, and location of all the departments. Use the `%ROWTYPE` attribute.
Solution 6: Working with Composite Data Types (continued)

```sql
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

DECLARE
  TYPE dept_table_type is table of departments%ROWTYPE
  INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
my_dept_table dept_table_type;
f_loop_count NUMBER (2):=10;
v_deptno NUMBER (4):=0;
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 1..f_loop_count
  LOOP
    v_deptno := v_deptno + 10;
    SELECT *
    INTO my_dept_table(i)
    FROM departments
    WHERE department_id = v_deptno;
  END LOOP;
END;
```

c) Modify the SELECT statement to retrieve all department information currently in the departments table and store it in the associative array.

```sql
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 1..f_loop_count
  LOOP
    v_deptno := v_deptno + 10;
    SELECT *
    INTO my_dept_table(i)
    FROM departments
    WHERE department_id = v_deptno;
  END LOOP;
END;
```

d) Using another loop, retrieve the department information from the associative array and display the information.

```sql
FOR i IN 1..f_loop_count
  LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Department Number: ' ||
my_dept_table(i).department_id
|| ' Department Name: ' ||
my_dept_table(i).department_name
|| ' Manager Id: ' || my_dept_table(i).manager_id
|| ' Location Id: ' || my_dept_table(i).location_id);
  END LOOP;
END;
```
The sample output is as follows:

```sql
anonymous block completed
Department Number: 10 Department Name: Administration Manager Id: 200 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 20 Department Name: Marketing Manager Id: 201 Location Id: 1800
Department Number: 30 Department Name: Purchasing Manager Id: 114 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 40 Department Name: Human Resources Manager Id: 203 Location Id: 2400
Department Number: 50 Department Name: Shipping Manager Id: 121 Location Id: 1500
Department Number: 60 Department Name: IT Manager Id: 103 Location Id: 1400
Department Number: 70 Department Name: Public Relations Manager Id: 204 Location Id: 2700
Department Number: 80 Department Name: Sales Manager Id: 145 Location Id: 2500
Department Number: 90 Department Name: Executive Manager Id: 100 Location Id: 1700
Department Number: 100 Department Name: Finance Manager Id: 108 Location Id: 1700
```
Practice 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors

In this practice, you perform two exercises:
- First, you use an explicit cursor to process a number of rows from a table and populate another table with the results using a cursor FOR loop.
- Second, you write a PL/SQL block that processes information with two cursors, including one that uses a parameter.

1) Create a PL/SQL block to perform the following:
   a) In the declarative section, declare and initialize a variable named v_deptno of type NUMBER. Assign a valid department ID value (see table in step d for values).

   b) Declare a cursor named c_emp_cursor, which retrieves the last_name, salary, and manager_id of employees working in the department specified in v_deptno.

   c) In the executable section, use the cursor FOR loop to operate on the data retrieved. If the salary of the employee is less than 5,000 and if the manager ID is either 101 or 124, display the message “<<last_name>> Due for a raise.” Otherwise, display the message “<<last_name>> Not Due for a raise.”

   d) Test the PL/SQL block for the following cases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Whalen Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Hartstein Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pay Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Weiss Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fripp Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaufling Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vollman Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OConnell Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grant Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Russell Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partners Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Errazuriz Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cambrault Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Livingston Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Johnson Not Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2) Next, write a PL/SQL block that declares and uses two cursors—one without a parameter and one with a parameter. The first cursor retrieves the department number and the department name from the departments table for all departments whose ID number is less than 100. The second cursor receives the department number as a parameter, and retrieves employee details for those who work in that department and whose employee_id is less than 120.

   a) Declare a cursor c_dept_cursor to retrieve department_id and department_name for those departments with department_id less than 100. Order by department_id.

   b) Declare another cursor c_emp_cursor that takes the department number as parameter and retrieves the following data from the employees table: last_name, job_id, hire_date, and salary of those employees who work in that department, with employee_id less than 120.

   c) Declare variables to hold the values retrieved from each cursor. Use the %TYPE attribute while declaring variables.

   d) Open c_dept_cursor and use a simple loop to fetch values into the variables declared. Display the department number and department name. Use the appropriate cursor attribute to exit the loop.

   e) Open c_emp_cursor by passing the current department number as a parameter. Start another loop and fetch the values of emp_cursor into variables, and print all the details retrieved from the employees table.

   **Note**
   - Check whether c_emp_cursor is already open before opening the cursor.
   - Use the appropriate cursor attribute for the exit condition.
   - When the loop completes, print a line after you have displayed the details of each department, and close c_emp_cursor.

   f) End the first loop and close c_dept_cursor. Then end the executable section.

   g) Execute the script. The sample output is as follows:
Practice 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department Number</th>
<th>Department Name</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Position</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Salary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
<td>Raphael</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>07-DEC-94</td>
<td>11000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Khoo</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>18-MAY-95</td>
<td>11000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Baida</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>24-DEC-97</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tobias</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>24-JUL-97</td>
<td>2800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Colmenares</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>10-AUG-99</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Shipping</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Hunold</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>03-JAN-90</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ernst</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>21-MAY-91</td>
<td>6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Austin</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>25-JUN-97</td>
<td>4800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>05-FEB-98</td>
<td>4800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lorentz</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>07-FEB-99</td>
<td>4200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Public Relations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Sales</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Executive</td>
<td>King</td>
<td>AD_PRES</td>
<td>17-JUN-87</td>
<td>24000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Kochhar</td>
<td>AD_VP</td>
<td>21-SEP-89</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>De Miao</td>
<td>AD_VP</td>
<td>15-JAN-95</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Practice 7-2: Using Explicit Cursors – Optional**

If you have time, complete the following optional practice. Here, create a PL/SQL block that uses an explicit cursor to determine the top \( n \) salaries of employees.

1) Run the `lab_07-2.sql` script to create the `top_salaries` table for storing the salaries of the employees.

2) In the declarative section, declare the `v_num` variable of the `NUMBER` type that holds a number \( n \), representing the number of top \( n \) earners from the `employees` table. For example, to view the top five salaries, enter 5. Declare another variable `sal` of type `employees.salary`. Declare a cursor, `c_emp_cursor`, which retrieves the salaries of employees in descending order. Remember that the salaries should not be duplicated.

3) In the executable section, open the loop and fetch the top \( n \) salaries, and then insert them into the `top_salaries` table. You can use a simple loop to operate on the data. Also, try and use the `%ROWCOUNT` and `%FOUND` attributes for the exit condition. **Note**: Make sure that you add an exit condition to avoid having an infinite loop.

4) After inserting data into the `top_salaries` table, display the rows with a `SELECT` statement. The output shown represents the five highest salaries in the `employees` table.

```
+-------------+
| SALARY      |
+-------------+
| 24000       |
| 17000       |
| 17000       |
| 14000       |
| 13500       |
```

5) Test a variety of special cases such as `v_num = 0` or where `v_num` is greater than the number of employees in the `employees` table. Empty the `top_salaries` table after each test.
**Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors**

In this practice, you perform two exercises:

- First, you use an explicit cursor to process a number of rows from a table and populate another table with the results using a cursor FOR loop.
- Second, you write a PL/SQL block that processes information with two cursors, including one that uses a parameter.

1) Create a PL/SQL block to perform the following:

   a) In the declarative section, declare and initialize a variable named `v_deptno` of the `NUMBER` type. Assign a valid department ID value (see table in step d for values).

       ```sql
       DECLARE
       v_deptno NUMBER := 10;
       ```

   b) Declare a cursor named `c_emp_cursor`, which retrieves the `last_name`, `salary`, and `manager_id` of employees working in the department specified in `v_deptno`.

       ```sql
       CURSOR c_emp_cursor IS
       SELECT last_name, salary, manager_id
       FROM employees
       WHERE department_id = v_deptno;
       ```

   c) In the executable section, use the cursor FOR loop to operate on the data retrieved. If the salary of the employee is less than 5,000 and if the manager ID is either 101 or 124, display the message “<<last_name>> Due for a raise.” Otherwise, display the message “<<last_name>> Not Due for a raise.”

       ```sql
       BEGIN
       FOR emp_record IN c_emp_cursor
       LOOP
         IF emp_record.salary < 5000 AND (emp_record.manager_id=101 OR emp_record.manager_id=124) THEN
           DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (emp_record.last_name || ' Due for a raise');
         ELSE
           DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (emp_record.last_name || ' Not Due for a raise');
         END IF;
       END LOOP;
       END;
       ```

   d) Test the PL/SQL block for the following cases:
Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Whalen Due for a raise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 20            | Hartstein Not Due for a raise  
|               | Pay Not Due for a raise |
| 50            | Weiss Not Due for a raise  
|               | Fripp Not Due for a raise  
|               | Kauffling Not Due for a raise  
|               | Vollman Not Due for a raise  |
|               | ...  
|               | OConnell Due for a raise  
|               | Grant Due for a raise |
| 80            | Russell Not Due for a raise  
|               | Partners Not Due for a raise  
|               | Errazariz Not Due for a raise  
|               | Cambrault Not Due for a raise  |
|               | ...  
|               | Livingston Not Due for a raise  
|               | Johnson Not Due for a raise |

2) Next, write a PL/SQL block that declares and uses two cursors—one without a parameter and one with a parameter. The first cursor retrieves the department number and the department name from the departments table for all departments whose ID number is less than 100. The second cursor receives the department number as a parameter, and retrieves employee details for those who work in that department and whose employee_id is less than 120.

   a) Declare a cursor c_dept_cursor to retrieve department_id and department_name for those departments with department_id less than 100. Order by department_id.

   DECLARE
   CURSOR c_dept_cursor IS
   SELECT department_id, department_name
   FROM departments
   WHERE department_id < 100
   ORDER BY department_id;
Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors (continued)

b) Declare another cursor c_emp_cursor that takes the department number as parameter and retrieves the following data from the employees table: last_name, job_id, hire_date, and salary of those employees who work in that department, with employee_id less than 120.

```
CURSOR c_emp_cursor(v_deptno NUMBER) IS
    SELECT last_name, job_id, hire_date, salary
    FROM employees
    WHERE department_id = v_deptno
    AND employee_id < 120;
```

c) Declare variables to hold the values retrieved from each cursor. Use the %TYPE attribute while declaring variables.

```
v_current_deptno departments.department_id%TYPE;
v_current_dname departments.department_name%TYPE;
v_eName employees.last_name%TYPE;
v_job employees.job_id%TYPE;
v_hiredate employees.hire_date%TYPE;
v_sal employees.salary%TYPE;
```

d) Open c_dept_cursor and use a simple loop to fetch values into the variables declared. Display the department number and department name. Use the appropriate cursor attribute to exit the loop.

```
BEGIN
    OPEN c_dept_cursor;
    LOOP
        FETCH c_dept_cursor INTO v_current_deptno,
        v_current_dname;
        EXIT WHEN c_dept_cursor%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Department Number : ' ||
            v_current_deptno || ' Department Name : ' ||
            v_current_dname);
    END LOOP;
END;
```
Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors (continued)

e) Open c_emp_cursor by passing the current department number as a parameter. Start another loop and fetch the values of emp_cursor into variables, and print all the details retrieved from the employees table.

Note
- Check whether c_emp_cursor is already open before opening the cursor.
- Use the appropriate cursor attribute for the exit condition.
- When the loop completes, print a line after you have displayed the details of each department, and close c_emp_cursor.

```sql
IF c_emp_cursor%ISOPEN THEN
   CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
END IF;
OPEN c_emp_cursor (v_current_deptno);
LOOP
   FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO v_ename,v_job,v_hiredate,v_sal;
   EXIT WHEN c_emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (v_ename || ' ' || v_job
   || ' ' || v_hiredate || ' ' || v_sal);
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('--------------------------------------------------------------
--------------------------------------------------------------');
   CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
```

f) End the first loop and close c_dept_cursor. Then end the executable section.

```sql
END LOOP;
CLOSE c_dept_cursor;
END;
```

g) Execute the script. The sample output is as follows:
### Solution 7-1: Using Explicit Cursors (continued)

```sql
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department Number</th>
<th>Department Name</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Shipping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Public Relations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Sales</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Executive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Hire Date</th>
<th>Salary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Raphaely</td>
<td>PU_MAN</td>
<td>07-DEC-94</td>
<td>11000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khoo</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>18-MAY-95</td>
<td>3100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baida</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>24-DEC-97</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobias</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>24-JUL-97</td>
<td>2800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Himako</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>15-NOV-90</td>
<td>2600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colmenares</td>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>10-AUG-99</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunold</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>03-JAN-90</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ernst</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>21-MAY-91</td>
<td>6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austin</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>25-JUN-97</td>
<td>4800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pataballa</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>05-FEB-98</td>
<td>4800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorentz</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>07-FEB-99</td>
<td>4200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King</td>
<td>AD_PRES</td>
<td>17-JUN-87</td>
<td>24000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kochhar</td>
<td>AD_VP</td>
<td>21-SEP-89</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Maat</td>
<td>AD_VP</td>
<td>15-JAN-95</td>
<td>17000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Solution 7-2: Using Explicit Cursors – Optional

If you have time, complete the following optional exercise. Here, create a PL/SQL block that uses an explicit cursor to determine the top \( n \) salaries of employees.

1) Execute the `lab_07-02.sql` script to create a new table, `top_salaries`, for storing the salaries of the employees.

2) In the declarative section, declare a variable `v_num` of type `NUMBER` that holds a number \( n \), representing the number of top \( n \) earners from the `employees` table. For example, to view the top five salaries, enter `5`. Declare another variable `sal` of type `employees.salary`. Declare a cursor, `c_emp_cursor`, which retrieves the salaries of employees in descending order. Remember that the salaries should not be duplicated.

```
DECLARE
    v_num     NUMBER(3) := 5;
    v_sal     employees.salary%TYPE;
    CURSOR    c_emp_cursor IS
              SELECT    salary
              FROM      employees
              ORDER BY  salary DESC;
END;
```

3) In the executable section, open the loop and fetch the top \( n \) salaries, and then insert them into the `top_salaries` table. You can use a simple loop to operate on the data. Also, try and use the `%ROWCOUNT` and `%FOUND` attributes for the exit condition.

**Note:** Make sure that you add an exit condition to avoid having an infinite loop.

```
BEGIN
    OPEN c_emp_cursor;
    FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO v_sal;
    WHILE c_emp_cursor%ROWCOUNT <= v_num AND c_emp_cursor%FOUND LOOP
        INSERT INTO top_salaries (salary)
        VALUES (v_sal);
        FETCH c_emp_cursor INTO v_sal;
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE c_emp_cursor;
END;
```
Solution 7-2: Using Explicit Cursors – Optional (continued)

4) After inserting data into the top_salaries table, display the rows with a SELECT statement. The output shown represents the five highest salaries in the employees table.

```
/ 
SELECT * FROM top_salaries;
```

The sample output is as follows:

```
SALARY
----------
24000
17000
17000
14000
13500
```

5) Test a variety of special cases such as v_num = 0 or where v_num is greater than the number of employees in the employees table. Empty the top_salaries table after each test.
Practice 8-1: Handling Predefined Exceptions

In this practice, you write a PL/SQL block that applies a predefined exception in order to process only one record at a time. The PL/SQL block selects the name of the employee with a given salary value.

1) Execute the command in the lab_05_01.sql file to re-create the messages table.

2) In the declarative section, declare two variables: v_name of type employees.last_name and v_emp_sal of type employees.salary. Initialize the latter to 6000.

3) In the executable section, retrieve the last names of employees whose salaries are equal to the value in v_emp_sal. If the salary entered returns only one row, insert into the messages table the employee’s name and the salary amount. **Note**: Do not use explicit cursors.

4) If the salary entered does not return any rows, handle the exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “No employee with a salary of <salary>.”

5) If the salary entered returns multiple rows, handle the exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “More than one employee with a salary of <salary>.”

6) Handle any other exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “Some other error occurred.”

7) Display the rows from the messages table to check whether the PL/SQL block has executed successfully. The output is as follows:

```
RESULTS
More than one employee with a salary of 6000
1 rows selected
```

8) Change the initialized value of v_emp_sal to 2000 and re-execute. Output is as follows:
**Practice 8-1: Handling Predefined Exceptions (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESULTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More than one employee with a salary of 6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No employee with a salary of 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 rows selected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Practice 8-2: Handling Standard Oracle Server Exceptions**

In this practice, you write a PL/SQL block that declares an exception for the Oracle Server error `ORA-02292` (integrity constraint violated – child record found). The block tests for the exception and outputs the error message.

1) In the declarative section, declare an exception `e_childrecord_exists`. Associate the declared exception with the standard Oracle Server error -02292.

2) In the executable section, display “Deleting department 40....” Include a `DELETE` statement to delete the department with the `department_id` 40.

3) Include an exception section to handle the `e_childrecord_exists` exception and display the appropriate message.

   The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Deleting department 40.......
Cannot delete this department. There are employees in this department (child records exist.)
```
Solution 8-1: Handling Predefined Exceptions

In this practice, you write a PL/SQL block that applies a predefined exception in order to process only one record at a time. The PL/SQL block selects the name of the employee with a given salary value.

1) Execute the command in the lab_05_01.sql file to recreate the messages table.

2) In the declarative section, declare two variables: v_ename of type employees.last_name and v_emp_sal of type employees.salary. Initialize the latter to 6000.

```sql
DECLARE
    v_ename employees.last_name%TYPE;
    v_emp_sal employees.salary%TYPE := 6000;
```

3) In the executable section, retrieve the last names of employees whose salaries are equal to the value in v_emp_sal. If the salary entered returns only one row, insert into the messages table the employee’s name and the salary amount.

   **Note:** Do not use explicit cursors.

```sql
BEGIN
    SELECT last_name
    INTO v_ename
    FROM employees
    WHERE salary = v_emp_sal;
    INSERT INTO messages (results) VALUES (v_ename || ' - ' || v_emp_sal);
END;
```

4) If the salary entered does not return any rows, handle the exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “No employee with a salary of <salary>.”

```sql
EXCEPTION
    WHEN no_data_found THEN
        INSERT INTO messages (results) VALUES ('No employee with a salary of ' || TO_CHAR(v_emp_sal));
```
5) If the salary entered returns multiple rows, handle the exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “More than one employee with a salary of <salary>.”

```
WHEN too_many_rows THEN
    INSERT INTO messages (results)
    VALUES ('More than one employee with a salary of ' ||
             TO_CHAR(v_emp_sal));
```

6) Handle any other exception with an appropriate exception handler and insert into the messages table the message “Some other error occurred.”

```
WHEN others THEN
    INSERT INTO messages (results)
    VALUES ('Some other error occurred.');
END;
```

7) Display the rows from the messages table to check whether the PL/SQL block has executed successfully.

```
/ 
SELECT * FROM messages;
```

The output is as follows:

```
RESULTS
----------------------------------------
More than one employee with a salary of 6000
1 rows selected
```

8) Change the initialized value of v_emp_sal to 2000 and re-execute. The output is as follows:

```
RESULTS
----------------------------------------
More than one employee with a salary of 6000
No employee with a salary of 2000
2 rows selected
```
Solution 8-2: Handling Standard Oracle Server Exceptions

In this practice, you write a PL/SQL block that declares an exception for the Oracle Server error `ORA-02292` (integrity constraint violated - child record found). The block tests for the exception and outputs the error message.

1) In the declarative section, declare an exception `e_childrecord_exists`. Associate the declared exception with the standard Oracle Server error -02292.

```plsql
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
    e_childrecord_exists EXCEPTION;
    PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT(e_childrecord_exists, -02292);
```

2) In the executable section, display “Deleting department 40....” Include a `DELETE` statement to delete the department with `department_id` 40.

```plsql
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Deleting department 40........');
    delete from departments where department_id=40;
END;
```

3) Include an exception section to handle the `e_childrecord_exists` exception and display the appropriate message.

```plsql
EXCEPTION
    WHEN e_childrecord_exists THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Cannot delete this department. There are employees in this department (child records exist.) ');
END;
```

The sample output is as follows:

```
anonymous block completed
Deleting department 40........
Cannot delete this department. There are employees in this department (child records exist.)
```
Practice 9: Creating and Using Stored Procedures

In this practice, you modify existing scripts to create and use stored procedures.

1) Load the `sol_02_04.sql` script from the /home/oracle/plsf/soln/ folder.
   a) Modify the script to convert the anonymous block to a procedure called `greet`. (Hint: Also remove the `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` command.)
   b) Execute the script to create the procedure. The output results should be as follows:

   ![Output](PROCEDURE greet Compiled.)

   c) Save this script as `lab_09_01_soln.sql`.
   d) Click the Clear button to clear the workspace.
   e) Create and execute an anonymous block to invoke the `greet` procedure. (Hint: Ensure that you enable `SERVEROUTPUT` at the beginning of the block.)

   The output should be similar to the following:

   ![Output](anonymous block completed
   Hello World
   TODAY IS : 10-JUL-09
   TOMORROW IS : 11-JUL-09)

2) Modify the `lab_09_01_soln.sql` script as follows:
   a) Drop the `greet` procedure by issuing the following command:

   ```sql
   DROP PROCEDURE greet;
   ```

   b) Modify the procedure to accept an argument of type `VARCHAR2`. Call the argument `p_name`.

   c) Print `Hello <name>` (that is, the contents of the argument) instead of printing `Hello World`.

   d) Save your script as `lab_09_02_soln.sql`.

   e) Execute the script to create the procedure. The output results should be as follows:
f) Create and execute an anonymous block to invoke the `greet` procedure with a parameter value. The block should also produce the output.

The sample output should be similar to the following:

```
Results  | Script Output | Explain
---------|---------------|---------
DROP PROCEDURE greet succeeded.  
PROCEDURE greet Compiled.

anonymous block completed  
Hello Nancy  
TODAY IS : 10-JUL-09  
TOMORROW IS : 11-JUL-09
```
Solution 9: Creating and Using Stored Procedures

In this practice, you modify existing scripts to create and use stored procedures.

1) Load the sol_02_04.sql script from the /home/oracle/plsf/soln/ folder.
   a) Modify the script to convert the anonymous block to a procedure called `greet`.  
      (**Hint:** Also remove the `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` command.)

```
CREATE PROCEDURE greet IS
    V_today DATE:=SYSDATE;
    V_tomorrow today%TYPE;
    ...
```

b) Execute the script to create the procedure. The output results should be as follows:

```
PROCEDURE greet Compiled.
```

c) Save this script as `lab_09_01_soln.sql`.

d) Click the Clear button to clear the workspace.

e) Create and execute an anonymous block to invoke the `greet` procedure. (**Hint:** Ensure that you enable `SERVEROUTPUT` at the beginning of the block.)

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

BEGIN
    greet;
END;
```

The output should be similar to the following:

```
anonymous block completed
Hello World
TODAY IS : 10-JUL-09
TOMORROW IS : 11-JUL-09
```
Solution 9: Creating and Using Stored Procedures (continued)

2) Modify the lab_09_01_soln.sql script as follows:
   a) Drop the greet procedure by issuing the following command:

   ```sql
   DROP PROCEDURE greet;
   ```

   b) Modify the procedure to accept an argument of type VARCHAR2. Call the
      argument p_name.

   ```sql
   CREATE PROCEDURE greet(p_name VARCHAR2) IS
   V_today DATE:=SYSDATE;
   V_tomorrow today%TYPE;
   BEGIN
   V_tomorrow:=v_today +1;
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Hello || p_name);
   ...
   ```

   c) Print Hello <name> instead of printing Hello World.

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   V_tomorrow:=v_today +1;
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Hello '|| p_name);
   ...
   ```

   d) Save your script as lab_09_02_soln.sql.
   e) Execute the script to create the procedure. The output results should be as follows:

   ```sql
   DROP PROCEDURE greet succeeded.
   PROCEDURE greet Compiled.
   ```

   f) Create and execute an anonymous block to invoke the greet procedure with a
      parameter value. The block should also produce the output.

   ```sql
   SET SERVEROUTPUT ON;
   BEGIN
   greet('Nancy');
   END;
   ```

   The sample output should be similar to the following:

   ```sql
   anonymous block completed
   Hello Nancy
   TODAY IS : 10-JUL-09
   TOMORROW IS : 11-JUL-09
   ```
### Tables in the Schema

```
SELECT * FROM tab;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNAME</th>
<th>TABTYPE</th>
<th>CLUSTERID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COUNTRIES</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTMENTS</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPLOYEES</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMP_DETAILS_VIEW</td>
<td>VIEW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOBS</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOB_HISTORY</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCATIONS</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGIONS</td>
<td>TABLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 rows selected.
regions Table

DESCRIBE regions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REGION_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>NUMBER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGION_NAME</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(25)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SELECT * FROM regions;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGION_ID</th>
<th>REGION_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Middle East and Africa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## countries Table

### DESCRIBE countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COUNTRY_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>CHAR(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUNTRY_NAME</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGION_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SELECT * FROM countries;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CO</th>
<th>COUNTRY_NAME</th>
<th>REGION_ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BE</td>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DK</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EG</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HK</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KW</td>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NG</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>United States of America</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZM</td>
<td>Zambia</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZW</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25 rows selected
### locations Table

**DESCRIBE locations;**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOCATION_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>NUMBER(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STREET_ADDRESS</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTAL_CODE</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CITY</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATE_PROVINCE</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUNTRY_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>CHAR(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SELECT * FROM locations;**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION_ID</th>
<th>STREET_ADDRESS</th>
<th>POSTAL_CODE</th>
<th>CITY</th>
<th>STATE_PROVINCE</th>
<th>CO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1297 Via Cola di Rie</td>
<td>00989</td>
<td>Roma</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1100</td>
<td>93091 Calle della Testa</td>
<td>10934</td>
<td>Venice</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>2017 Shinjuku-ku</td>
<td>1689</td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>Tokyo Prefecture</td>
<td>JP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300</td>
<td>9450 Kamiya-cho</td>
<td>6023</td>
<td>Hiroshima</td>
<td>JP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400</td>
<td>2014 Jabbenwocky Rd</td>
<td>26192</td>
<td>Southlake</td>
<td>US</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500</td>
<td>2011 Interiors Blvd</td>
<td>99236</td>
<td>South San Francisco</td>
<td>US</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td>2007 Zagora St</td>
<td>50090</td>
<td>South Brunswick</td>
<td>US</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1700</td>
<td>2004 Charade Rd</td>
<td>98199</td>
<td>Seattle</td>
<td>Washington</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800</td>
<td>147 Spadina Ave</td>
<td>M5V 2L7</td>
<td>Toronto</td>
<td>Ontario</td>
<td>CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>6092 Boxwood St</td>
<td>YSW 9T2</td>
<td>Whitehorse</td>
<td>Yukon</td>
<td>CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>40-5-12 Laogianggen</td>
<td>190518</td>
<td>Beijing</td>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2100</td>
<td>1298 Vileparle (E)</td>
<td>490231</td>
<td>Bombay</td>
<td>Maharashtra</td>
<td>IN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION_ID</th>
<th>STREET_ADDRESS</th>
<th>POSTAL_CODE</th>
<th>CITY</th>
<th>STATE_PROVINCE</th>
<th>CO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2400</td>
<td>8204 Arthur St</td>
<td></td>
<td>London</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2500</td>
<td>Magdalen Centre, The Oxford Science Park</td>
<td>OX9 9ZB</td>
<td>Oxford</td>
<td>Oxford</td>
<td>UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2600</td>
<td>9702 Chester Road</td>
<td>09629850293</td>
<td>Stretford</td>
<td>Manchester</td>
<td>UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2700</td>
<td>Schwanthalerstr. 7031</td>
<td>80925</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>Bavaria</td>
<td>DE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2800</td>
<td>Rua Frei Caneca 1360</td>
<td>01307-002</td>
<td>Sao Paulo</td>
<td>Sao Paulo</td>
<td>BR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2900</td>
<td>20 Rue des Corps-Saints</td>
<td>1730</td>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>Geneve</td>
<td>CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000</td>
<td>Murtensstrasse 921</td>
<td>3095</td>
<td>Bern</td>
<td>BE</td>
<td>CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3100</td>
<td>Pieter Brougelstraat 637</td>
<td>3029SK</td>
<td>Utrecht</td>
<td>Utrecht</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3200</td>
<td>Mariano Escobedo 9991</td>
<td>11932</td>
<td>Mexico City</td>
<td>Distrito Federal</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23 rows selected.
**departments Table**

```sql
DESCRIBE departments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTMENT_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>NUMBER(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTMENT_NAME</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANAGER_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCATION_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SELECT * FROM departments;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTMENT_ID</th>
<th>DEPARTMENT_NAME</th>
<th>MANAGER_ID</th>
<th>LOCATION_ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>2400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Shipping</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Public Relations</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>2700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Executive</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Finance</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Accounting</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Treasury</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Corporate Tax</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Control And Credit</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Shareholder Services</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>Benefits</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Contracting</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Operations</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>IT Support</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220</td>
<td>NOC</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230</td>
<td>IT Helpdesk</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>Government Sales</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>Retail Sales</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>Recruiting</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>Payroll</td>
<td></td>
<td>1700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

27 rows selected.
**jobs Table**

```
DESCRIBE jobs
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JOB_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOB_TITLE</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN_SALARY</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_SALARY</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```

SELECT * FROM jobs;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOB_ID</th>
<th>JOB_TITLE</th>
<th>MIN_SALARY</th>
<th>MAX_SALARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AD_PRES</td>
<td>President</td>
<td>20000</td>
<td>40000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD_VP</td>
<td>Administration Vice President</td>
<td>15000</td>
<td>30000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD_ASST</td>
<td>Administration Assistant</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI_MGR</td>
<td>Finance Manager</td>
<td>8200</td>
<td>16000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>Accountant</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC_MGR</td>
<td>Accounting Manager</td>
<td>8200</td>
<td>16000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>Public Accountant</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA_MAN</td>
<td>Sales Manager</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>20000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>Sales Representative</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>12000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PU_MAN</td>
<td>Purchasing Manager</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>15000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PU_CLERK</td>
<td>Purchasing Clerk</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>5500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_MAN</td>
<td>Stock Manager</td>
<td>5500</td>
<td>8500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST_CLERK</td>
<td>Stock Clerk</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>Shipping Clerk</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>5500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>Programmer</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK_MAN</td>
<td>Marketing Manager</td>
<td>9000</td>
<td>15000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK_REP</td>
<td>Marketing Representative</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR_REP</td>
<td>Human Resources Representative</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR_REP</td>
<td>Public Relations Representative</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>10500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19 rows selected.
employees Table

DESCRIBE employees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMPLOYEE_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIRST_NAME</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST_NAME</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMAIL</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHONE_NUMBER</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIRE_DATE</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>DATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOB_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALARY</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(8,2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMISSION_PCT</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(2,2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANAGER_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTMENT_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The headings for the `commission_pct`, `manager_id`, and `department_id` columns are set to `comm`, `mgrid`, and `deptid`, respectively, in the following screenshot to fit the table values across the page.

```sql
SELECT * FROM employees;
```
employees Table (continued)

Oracle Database 11g: PL/SQL Fundamentals B - 11


### employees Table (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EMPLOYEE_ID</th>
<th>FIRST_NAME</th>
<th>LAST_NAME</th>
<th>EMAIL</th>
<th>PHONE_NUMBER</th>
<th>HIRE_DATE</th>
<th>JOB_ID</th>
<th>SALARY</th>
<th>comm</th>
<th>mgrid</th>
<th>depid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>Taylor</td>
<td>Fox</td>
<td>TOFOX</td>
<td>011.44.1342.720269</td>
<td>24-JAN-98</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>9600</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177</td>
<td>William</td>
<td>Smith</td>
<td>WSMITH</td>
<td>011.44.1342.629268</td>
<td>23-FEB-99</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>7400</td>
<td>.15</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172</td>
<td>Elizabeth</td>
<td>Bates</td>
<td>EBATES</td>
<td>011.44.1342.529268</td>
<td>24-MAR-99</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>7300</td>
<td>.15</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>173</td>
<td>Sundia</td>
<td>Kumar</td>
<td>SKUMAR</td>
<td>011.44.1342.329268</td>
<td>21-APR-00</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>6100</td>
<td>.1</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td>Ellen</td>
<td>Abel</td>
<td>EABEL</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420267</td>
<td>11-MAY-96</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>11000</td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>Alyssa</td>
<td>Hutton</td>
<td>AHUTTON</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420266</td>
<td>22-MAR-97</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>8800</td>
<td>.25</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>Jonathan</td>
<td>Taylor</td>
<td>JTAYLOR</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420265</td>
<td>24-MAR-98</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>8800</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>Livingston</td>
<td>JLIVINGS</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420264</td>
<td>23-APR-98</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>8400</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>Kimberly</td>
<td>Grant</td>
<td>KGRANT</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420263</td>
<td>22-MAY-99</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>7000</td>
<td>.15</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td>Charles</td>
<td>Johnson</td>
<td>CJJOHNSON</td>
<td>011.44.1644.420262</td>
<td>04-JUN-00</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>6200</td>
<td>.1</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>Melanie</td>
<td>Taylor</td>
<td>MTAYLOR</td>
<td>850.507.8876</td>
<td>24-JAN-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181</td>
<td>Jean</td>
<td>Fleaur</td>
<td>JFLEAUR</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>23-FEB-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td>Martha</td>
<td>Sullivan</td>
<td>MSULLIVA</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>21-JUL-99</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td>Girard</td>
<td>Geoni</td>
<td>GGEONI</td>
<td>650.507.8879</td>
<td>03-FEB-00</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2800</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>Nandita</td>
<td>Saroha</td>
<td>NSARCHAN</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>27-JAN-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>4200</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>Alexis</td>
<td>Bull</td>
<td>ABULL</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>20-FEB-97</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>4100</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186</td>
<td>Julia</td>
<td>Dellinger</td>
<td>JDELLING</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>24-JUN-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3400</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td>Anthony</td>
<td>Cabrio</td>
<td>ACABRIO</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>07-FEB-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>Kelly</td>
<td>Chung</td>
<td>KCHUNG</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>14-JUN-97</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Jennifer</td>
<td>Dilly</td>
<td>JDILLY</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>13-AUG-97</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Timothy</td>
<td>Gates</td>
<td>TGATES</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>11-JUL-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2900</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td>Randall</td>
<td>Perkins</td>
<td>RPERRINS</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>19-DEC-99</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td>Bell</td>
<td>SBELL</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>04-FEB-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>Britney</td>
<td>Everett</td>
<td>BEVERETT</td>
<td>850.507.8876</td>
<td>03-MAR-97</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3900</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>Samuel</td>
<td>McCain</td>
<td>SMCCAIN</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>01-JUL-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>Vance</td>
<td>Jones</td>
<td>VJONES</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>17-MAR-99</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2600</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td>Alana</td>
<td>Walsh</td>
<td>AVALASH</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>24-AUG-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>Kevin</td>
<td>Feeney</td>
<td>KFEENEY</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>22-MAY-98</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>Donald</td>
<td>O’Connell</td>
<td>DOCONNEL</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>21-JUN-99</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2600</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td>Douglas</td>
<td>Grant</td>
<td>DGRANT</td>
<td>650.507.8876</td>
<td>13-JAN-00</td>
<td>SH_CLERK</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Jennifer</td>
<td>Whalen</td>
<td>JWHALEN</td>
<td>515.123.4444</td>
<td>17-SEP-87</td>
<td>AD_ASST</td>
<td>4400</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Michael</td>
<td>Hartstein</td>
<td>MHARTSTE</td>
<td>515.123.5555</td>
<td>17-FEB-98</td>
<td>MK_MAN</td>
<td>13000</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Pat</td>
<td>Fay</td>
<td>PFAY</td>
<td>603.123.6666</td>
<td>17-AUG-97</td>
<td>MK_REP</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>Susan</td>
<td>Morris</td>
<td>SHYVIRIS</td>
<td>515.123.7777</td>
<td>07-JUN-94</td>
<td>HR_REP</td>
<td>6500</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>Hermann</td>
<td>Baer</td>
<td>HBAER</td>
<td>515.123.8888</td>
<td>07-JUN-94</td>
<td>PR_REP</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Shelley</td>
<td>Higgins</td>
<td>SHHIGGINS</td>
<td>515.123.8888</td>
<td>07-JUN-94</td>
<td>AC_MGR</td>
<td>12000</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>William</td>
<td>Gietz</td>
<td>WGIETZ</td>
<td>515.123.8101</td>
<td>07-JUN-94</td>
<td>AC_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>8300</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

107 rows selected.
**job_history Table**

```sql
DESCRIBE job_history
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMPLOYEE_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START_DATE</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>DATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>END_DATE</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>DATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOB_ID</td>
<td>NOT NULL</td>
<td>VARCHAR2(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTMENT_ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```sql
SELECT * FROM job_history;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EMPLOYEE_ID</th>
<th>START_DATE</th>
<th>END_DATE</th>
<th>JOB_ID</th>
<th>deptid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>13-JAN-93</td>
<td>24-JUL-98</td>
<td>IT_PROG</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>21-SEP-89</td>
<td>27-OCT-93</td>
<td>AC_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>28-OCT-93</td>
<td>15-MAR-97</td>
<td>AC_MGR</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>17-FEB-96</td>
<td>19-DEC-99</td>
<td>MK_REP</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>24-MAR-98</td>
<td>31-DEC-99</td>
<td>ST_CLERK</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>01-JAN-99</td>
<td>31-DEC-99</td>
<td>ST_CLERK</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>17-SEP-87</td>
<td>17-JUN-93</td>
<td>AD_ASST</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>24-MAR-98</td>
<td>31-DEC-98</td>
<td>SA_REP</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>01-JAN-99</td>
<td>31-DEC-99</td>
<td>SA_MAN</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>01-JUL-94</td>
<td>31-DEC-98</td>
<td>AC_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 rows selected.
ref Cursors
Cursor Variables

- Cursor variables are like C or Pascal pointers, which hold the memory location (address) of an item instead of the item itself.
- In PL/SQL, a pointer is declared as `REF X`, where `REF` is short for `REFERENCE` and `X` stands for a class of objects.
- A cursor variable has the data type `REF CURSOR`.
- A cursor is static, but a cursor variable is dynamic.
- Cursor variables give you more flexibility.

Cursor Variables

Cursor variables are like C or Pascal pointers, which hold the memory location (address) of an item instead of the item itself. Thus, declaring a cursor variable creates a pointer, not an item. In PL/SQL, a pointer has the data type `REF X`, where `REF` is short for `REFERENCE` and `X` stands for a class of objects. A cursor variable has the `REF CURSOR` data type.

Like a cursor, a cursor variable points to the current row in the result set of a multirow query. However, cursors differ from cursor variables the way constants differ from variables. A cursor is static, but a cursor variable is dynamic because it is not tied to a specific query. You can open a cursor variable for any type-compatible query. This gives you more flexibility.

Cursor variables are available to every PL/SQL client. For example, you can declare a cursor variable in a PL/SQL host environment such as an OCI or Pro*C program, and then pass it as an input host variable (bind variable) to PL/SQL. Moreover, application development tools such as Oracle Forms and Oracle Reports, which have a PL/SQL engine, can use cursor variables entirely on the client side. The Oracle Server also has a PL/SQL engine. You can pass cursor variables back and forth between an application and server through remote procedure calls (RPCs).
Using Cursor Variables

- You can use cursor variables to pass query result sets between PL/SQL stored subprograms and various clients.
- PL/SQL can share a pointer to the query work area in which the result set is stored.
- You can pass the value of a cursor variable freely from one scope to another.
- You can reduce network traffic by having a PL/SQL block open (or close) several host cursor variables in a single roundtrip.

Using Cursor Variables

You use cursor variables to pass query result sets between PL/SQL stored subprograms and various clients. Neither PL/SQL nor any of its clients owns a result set; they simply share a pointer to the query work area in which the result set is stored. For example, an OCI client, an Oracle Forms application, and the Oracle Server can all refer to the same work area. A query work area remains accessible as long as any cursor variable points to it. Therefore, you can pass the value of a cursor variable freely from one scope to another. For example, if you pass a host cursor variable to a PL/SQL block that is embedded in a Pro*C program, the work area to which the cursor variable points remains accessible after the block completes.

If you have a PL/SQL engine on the client side, calls from the client to the server impose no restrictions. For example, you can declare a cursor variable on the client side, open and fetch from it on the server side, and then continue to fetch from it back on the client side. Also, you can reduce network traffic by having a PL/SQL block open (or close) several host cursor variables in a single roundtrip.

A cursor variable holds a reference to the cursor work area in the Program Global Area (PGA) instead of addressing it with a static name. Because you address this area by a reference, you gain the flexibility of a variable.
Defining \texttt{REF CURSOR} Types

Define a \texttt{REF CURSOR} type:

\begin{verbatim}
Define a \texttt{REF CURSOR} type
\texttt{TYPE ref\_type\_name IS REF CURSOR [RETURN return\_type];}
\end{verbatim}

Declare a cursor variable of that type:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{ref\_cv ref\_type\_name;}
\end{verbatim}

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
DECLARE
\texttt{TYPE DeptCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN departments\%ROWTYPE;}
\texttt{dept\_cv DeptCurTyp;}
\end{verbatim}

\section*{Defining \texttt{REF CURSOR} Types}

To define a \texttt{REF CURSOR}, you perform two steps. First, you define a \texttt{REF CURSOR} type, and then you declare cursor variables of that type. You can define \texttt{REF CURSOR} types in any PL/SQL block, subprogram, or package using the following syntax:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{TYPE ref\_type\_name IS REF CURSOR [RETURN return\_type];}
\end{verbatim}

where:

- \texttt{ref\_type\_name} is a type specifier used in subsequent declarations of cursor variables
- \texttt{return\_type} represents a record or a row in a database table

In this example, you specify a return type that represents a row in the database table \texttt{DEPARTMENT}.

\texttt{REF CURSOR} types can be strong (restrictive) or weak (nonrestrictive). As the next example shows, a strong \texttt{REF CURSOR} type definition specifies a return type, but a weak definition does not:

\begin{verbatim}
DECLARE
\texttt{TYPE EmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN employees\%ROWTYPE; \quad \textit{-- strong}}
\texttt{TYPE GenericCurTyp IS REF CURSOR; \quad \textit{-- weak}}
\end{verbatim}
Defining REF CURSOR Types (continued)

Strong REF CURSOR types are less error prone because the PL/SQL compiler lets you associate a strongly typed cursor variable only with type-compatible queries. However, weak REF CURSOR types are more flexible because the compiler lets you associate a weakly typed cursor variable with any query.

Declaring Cursor Variables

After you define a REF CURSOR type, you can declare cursor variables of that type in any PL/SQL block or subprogram. In the following example, you declare the cursor variable DEPT_CV:

```plsql
DECLARE
    TYPE DeptCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN departments%ROWTYPE;
    dept_cv DeptCurTyp;  --declare cursor variable
END;
```

Note: You cannot declare cursor variables in a package. Unlike packaged variables, cursor variables do not have persistent states. Remember, declaring a cursor variable creates a pointer, not an item. Cursor variables cannot be saved in the database; they follow the usual scoping and instantiation rules.

In the RETURN clause of a REF CURSOR type definition, you can use %ROWTYPE to specify a record type that represents a row returned by a strongly (not weakly) typed cursor variable, as follows:

```plsql
DECLARE
    TYPE TmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN employees%ROWTYPE;
    tmp_cv TmpCurTyp;  --declare cursor variable
    TYPE EmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN tmp_cv%ROWTYPE;
    emp_cv EmpCurTyp;  --declare cursor variable
END;
```

Similarly, you can use %TYPE to provide the data type of a record variable, as the following example shows:

```plsql
DECLARE
    dept_rec departments%ROWTYPE;  --declare record variable
    TYPE DeptCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN dept_rec%TYPE;
    dept_cv DeptCurTyp;  --declare cursor variable
END;
```

In the final example, you specify a user-defined RECORD type in the RETURN clause:

```plsql
DECLARE
    TYPE EmpRecTyp IS RECORD (  
        empno NUMBER(4),
        ename VARCHAR2(10),
        sal   NUMBER(7,2));
    TYPE EmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN EmpRecTyp;
    emp_cv EmpCurTyp;  --declare cursor variable
END;
```
Cursor Variables as Parameters

You can declare cursor variables as the formal parameters of functions and procedures. In the following example, you define the REF CURSOR type EmpCurTyp, and then declare a cursor variable of that type as the formal parameter of a procedure:

```plsql
DECLARE
    TYPE EmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR RETURN emp%ROWTYPE;
    PROCEDURE open_emp_cv (emp_cv IN OUT EmpCurTyp) IS ...
```
Using the OPEN-FOR, FETCH, and CLOSE Statements

- The OPEN-FOR statement associates a cursor variable with a multirow query, executes the query, identifies the result set, and positions the cursor to point to the first row of the result set.
- The FETCH statement returns a row from the result set of a multirow query, assigns the values of the select-list items to the corresponding variables or fields in the INTO clause, increments the count kept by %ROWCOUNT, and advances the cursor to the next row.
- The CLOSE statement disables a cursor variable.

Using the OPEN-FOR, FETCH, and CLOSE Statements

You use three statements to process a dynamic multirow query: OPEN-FOR, FETCH, and CLOSE. First, you “open” a cursor variable “for” a multirow query. Then you “fetch” rows from the result set one at a time. When all the rows are processed, you “close” the cursor variable.

Opening the Cursor Variable

The OPEN-FOR statement associates a cursor variable with a multirow query, executes the query, identifies the result set, positions the cursor to point to the first row of the result set, and then sets the rows-processed count kept by %ROWCOUNT to zero. Unlike the static form of OPEN-FOR, the dynamic form has an optional USING clause. At run time, bind arguments in the USING clause replace corresponding placeholders in the dynamic SELECT statement. The syntax is:

```
OPEN {cursor_variable | :host_cursor_variable} FOR
dynamic_string
[USING bind_argument[, bind_argument]...];
```

where CURSOR_VARIABLE is a weakly typed cursor variable (one without a return type), HOST_CURSOR_VARIABLE is a cursor variable declared in a PL/SQL host environment such as an OCI program, and dynamic_string is a string expression that represents a multirow query.
Using the **OPEN-FOR**, **FETCH**, and **CLOSE** Statements (continued)

In the following example, the syntax declares a cursor variable, and then associates it with a dynamic **SELECT** statement that returns rows from the **employees** table:

```
DECLARE
    TYPE EmpCurTyp IS REF CURSOR;  -- define weak REF CURSOR
type
    emp_cv   EmpCurTyp;  -- declare cursor variable
    my_ename VARCHAR2(15);
    my_sal   NUMBER := 1000;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cv FOR  -- open cursor variable
        'SELECT last_name, salary FROM employees WHERE salary > :s'
    USING my_sal;
    ...  
END;
```

Any bind arguments in the query are evaluated only when the cursor variable is opened. Thus, to fetch rows from the cursor using different bind values, you must reopen the cursor variable with the bind arguments set to their new values each time.

**Fetching from the Cursor Variable**

The **FETCH** statement returns a row from the result set of a multirow query, assigns the values of the select-list items to the corresponding variables or fields in the **INTO** clause, increments the count kept by **%ROWCOUNT**, and advances the cursor to the next row. Use the following syntax:

```
FETCH {cursor_variable | :host_cursor_variable}
    INTO {define_variable[, define_variable]... | record};
```

Continuing the example, fetch rows from the cursor variable `emp_cv` into the define variables `MY_ENAME` and `MY_SAL`:

```
LOOP
    FETCH emp_cv INTO my_ename, my_sal;  -- fetch next row
    EXIT WHEN emp_cv%NOTFOUND;  -- exit loop when last row is fetched
    -- process row
END LOOP;
```

For each column value returned by the query associated with the cursor variable, there must be a corresponding, type-compatible variable or field in the **INTO** clause. You can use a different **INTO** clause on separate fetches with the same cursor variable. Each fetch retrieves another row from the same result set. If you try to fetch from a closed or never-opened cursor variable, **PL/SQL** raises the predefined exception **INVALID_CURSOR**.
Using the \texttt{OPEN-FOR}, \texttt{FETCH}, and \texttt{CLOSE} Statements (continued)

Closing the_CURSOR Variable

The \texttt{CLOSE} statement disables a cursor variable. After that, the associated result set is undefined. Use the following syntax:

\begin{verbatim}
CLOSE \{cursor_variable | :host_cursor_variable\};
\end{verbatim}

In this example, when the last row is processed, close the \texttt{emp_cv} cursor variable:

\begin{verbatim}
LOOP
  FETCH emp_cv INTO my_ename, my_sal;
  EXIT WHEN emp_cv\%NOTFOUND;
  -- process row
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cv;  -- close cursor variable
\end{verbatim}

If you try to close an already-closed or never-opened cursor variable, PL/SQL raises \texttt{INVALID_CURSOR}.
Example of Fetching

The example in the slide shows that you can fetch rows from the result set of a dynamic multirow query into a record. You must first define a REF CURSOR type, EmpCurTyp. You then define a cursor variable emp_cv, of the type EmpCurTyp. In the executable section of the PL/SQL block, the OPEN-FOR statement associates the cursor variable emp_cv with the multirow query, sql_stmt. The FETCH statement returns a row from the result set of a multirow query and assigns the values of the select-list items to EMP_REC in the INTO clause. When the last row is processed, close the emp_cv cursor variable.